Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 1

A great summer



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

A blog post about summer vacation activities, Forum posts about summer vacation activities; A quiz about how you spend your summer; Hana Goda: a biography

Writing:

An informal email to a friend

Listening:

Understand conversations about summer activities

Speaking:

Play a guessing game about summer vacation activities; Ask and answer questions about how often you did something

Language:

The past simple tense; Adverbs of frequency with the past simple tense

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 4-7

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

coach (n)	مدرب	neighbor (n)	جار
talented (adj)	موهوب	meeting (n)	اجتماع
tiring (adj)	مُتعِب/مُرهق	a helping hand	يد العون
tournament (n)	دورة رياضية	imagine (d)	يتخيل
AI (artificial intelligence)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	volunteer (ed) (n)	يتطوع / متطوع
vacation (n)	عطلة/إجازة	help out (ed)	يساعد
workshop (n)	ورشة عمل	check (ed)	يتأكد

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

parents (n)	الوالدين	article (n)	اداة نكرة او تعريف
grandparents (n)	الاجداد	litter (n)	قمامة
local area	منطقة محلية	forum (n)	منتدى
computer software	برنامج على الكمبيوتر	chocolate bar wrapper	غلاف قالب الشيكولاتة
team (n)	فريق	poster (n)	ملصق
community garden	حديقة اجتماعية	recycling center	مركز اعادة تدوير
adult (n)	شخص بالغ / راشد	member (n)	عضو
Arabic (n)	اللغة العربية	project (n)	مشروع
surprised (adj)	مندهش	mistake (n)	خطأ
activities (n)	انشطة	decide (d)	يقرر
blog post	منشور فى مدونة	notice (d)	يلاحظ
partner (n)	زميل / شريك	repeat (ed)	يكرر/يردد
alphabet (n)	الحروف الابجدية	kick (ed)	يركل
especially (adv)	خصوصا	score (d)	يسجل
leader (n)	قائد	wait (ed)	ينتظر
sports club	نادى رياضى	pick up (ed)	يلتقط
What type?	ما نوع؟	join (ed)	ينضم/يلتحق بـ
amazing (adj)	رائع/مدهش		

Expressions & Prepositions

I tried / did my best	بذلت قصارى جهدى	take part in	يشارك فى
have a lot of fun	يستمتع كثيرا	at first	فى البداية
for a while	لفترة قصيرة	for example	على سبيل المثال
over the vacation	بمرور العطلة	on the street	فى الشارع
make sure	يتأكد	wait for	ينتطر لـ
make posters	يعمل ملصقات	at the end of.....	فى نهاية ....
people like me	اشخاص مثلى	nervous about	متوتر بشأن
do your homework	اعمل واجبك المنزلى	part of	جزء من
do activities	يقوم بانشطة	look at	ينظر الى
do well	يحسن صنعًا/يؤدى جيدًا	instead of	بدلا من
would like to + inf	يريد أن	help out	يساعد/يعاون
of course	بالطبع/بالتأكيد	join in	يشارك

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
quiet هادئ	calm	noisy مزعج
safe آمن	secure / protected	dangerous خطير
famous مشهور	well known	unknown غير معروف
fun ممتع	interesting	boring ممل
nervous متوتر	worried	calm هادئ
excited متحمس	interested	bored شاعر بالملل
strange غريب	unusual	usual معتاد
possible ممكن	probable	impossible مستحيل
positive ايجابى	confident	negative سلبى
empty فارغ	—	full ممتلئ

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
im-	تعطى عكس المعنى	impossible
-ous	تحول الاسم الى صفة	nervous
-ware	تشير الى البرامج المتعلقة بالكمبيوتر	software
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	especially
-er	تحول الفعل الى الفاعل	leader

Bit by Bit

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make	يعمل / يصنع	made	made
take part	يشارك	took part	took part
teach	يعلم / يُدَرّس	taught	taught
learn	يتعلم / يَدرُس	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
write	يكتب	wrote	written
tell	يخبر	told	told
win	يفوز	won	won
grow	ينمو/يزداد	grew	grown
find	يجد	found	found
set	تغرب الشمس	set	set
give up	يستسلم	gave up	given up
say	يقول	said	said

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 try + to + inf / try + v. ing

يمكن أن يأتى بعد الفعل (try) اما (to + inf) أو (v.ing) مع اختلاف فى المعنى كما يلى

• try + to + inf يحاول أن

Ex. We must try to prevent this from happening again

• (try + v. ing) يجرب عمل شئ لمعرفة النتيجة

Ex. The coach asked me "Do you want to try playing with the team?"

2 tiring- tired / amazing - amazed

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف شعور من لديه الصفة

Ex. Mr Ahmed is tired so he will go home. هنا/أحمد يشعر بالتعب

Ex. The world is amazed by Mo Salah's goals.

الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تصف المسبب للصفة

Ex. Watching much TV is tiring for your eyes.

هنا نصف مشاهدة التلفاز بانها مجهدة للعين

Ex. Traveling around the world is amazing.

Bit by Bit

3 see / hear / watch

يأتى الفعل بعد هذه الافعال اما مضاف اليه (ing) أو (inf) مع اختلاف فى المعنى

اذا جاء بعدها الفعل مضاف اليه (ing) فذلك يعنى أن الفاعل شاهد أو سمع جزء من الحدث	اذا جاء بعدها مصدر الفعل فذلك يعنى ان الفاعل شاهد أو سمع الحدث كاملا
Ex. I watched the children playing football.	**Ex.** The coach watched me kick the ball.

4 in the end / at the end

• **In the end = Finally** اخيرا	• **At the end** فى نهاية (of) + noun
غالبا يأتى بعدها (comma) ثم جملة كاملة (فاعل + فعل)	غالبا ياتى بعدها (of) ثم اسم
Ex. We worked hard, and in the end, we achieved our goal.	**Ex.** I pay the phone bill at the end of each month.

5 No / not

لنفى الافعال نستخدم (not) مع اخر الافعال الناقصة أو المساعدة	لنفى الاسماء نستخدم (no) قبل الاسم
Ex. I do not know him. They didn't have money.	**Ex.** I have no money. (~~not money~~) There were no mistakes.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Try _____ butter instead of oil.
   a. use b. to use c. using d. used
2. This job is really _____. I can't do it anymore.
   a. tired b. amazed c. tiring d. interested
3. I watched my mom _____.
   a. to cook b. cooks c. cooking d. cooked
4. There is a revision _____ the end of the unit.
   a. in b. at c. on d. of
5. We have _____ milk in the fridge.
   a. no b. not c. don't d. never

Read and listen to Omar's blog post. SB page 5

Hi, I'm Omar! This summer was great. I played football every day! At first, I played with some of my neighbors(1) in the street. Our street is quiet and very safe. We had a lot of fun and we liked to imagine(2) that we were famous(3) football players! Then, a new boy joined in. He told me about a football club in our area. One afternoon, I decided to go to the club.



There were lots of boys playing in two teams(4) and I watched them for a while. Then, the coach saw me and asked if I played football, too. "Do you want to try playing with the team?" he asked. Of course, I did! The coach watched me kick(5) the ball and said I was a talented(6) football player. He asked me to join the team. For the next six weeks, I played with my neighbors in the morning and then with the team at the football club in the afternoon. It was very tiring(7), but really fun! At the end of the summer, we took part in a tournament(8). I was nervous(9) about it, but excited. I tried my best and scored three goals! Our team won the tournament. It was an amazing end to the summer!

١- جيران
٢- يتخيل
٣- مشهور
٤- فرق
٥- يركل
٦- موهوب
٧- متعب
٨- دورة رياضية
٩- متوتر

Reading Skill **مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)**

1. The passage is about Omar's.....vacation. يتحدث النص عن .....
   a. winter b. fall c. summer d. spring
2. Infer from the text Omar's favorite sport. استنتج من النص رياضة عمر المفضلة
3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الاولى فى جملة

Writing Skill **مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)**

1. We had a lot of fun. .لقد استمتعنا كثيرًا
2. There were lots of boys playing in two teams.
   كان هناك الكثير من الأولاد يلعبون في فريقين.
3. At the end of the summer, we took part in a tournament.
   في نهاية الصيف، شاركنا في بطولة.
4. I tried my best and scored three goals! Our team won the tournament
   .بذلت قصارى جهدي وسجلت ثلاثة أهداف! فاز فريقنا بالبطولة.

Answers:
1. c. summer 2. Football
3. Omar spent his summer playing football with his neighbors and later joined a football club in his area.

Guessing the meaning of new words

When you find a new word, first try to understand what type of word it is. Does it describe a person or a thing (a noun), or an action (a verb)? Other words in the sentence can help you. For example, before a noun we usually find an article (a tournament, the game), an adjective (new friends) or a verb (I played football). You can use the meaning of these other words to help you find the meaning of the new word.

تخمين معنى كلمة جديدة

أذا وجدت كلمة جديدة فى نص حاول تخمينها كما يلى: اولا حاول معرفة نوع الكلمة (اسم/فعل/صفة.....)

Parts of speech انواع الكلام

1 - Nouns [Ahmed / Reading] اسماء	5 - Adverbs [slowly] احوال او ظروف
2 - Verbs [go - have] افعال	6 - Pronouns [he / him / his] ضمائر
3- Adjectives [sad - happy] صفات	7 - Prepositions [in - on - at] حروف الجر
4- Conjunctions [and - but] كلمات الربط	8 - Interjection [Wow / Oh] كلمات التعجب

اذا كانت الكلمة تشير الى شخص او شئ فهى اسم. واذا كانت تعبر عن حدوث شئ فهى فعل. وهناك كلمات فى النص تساعدك على معرفة نوع الكلمة حيث يسبق الاسماء اداة نكرة a/an او معرفة the ويمكن ان ياتى قبل الاسم صفة أو فعل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali is my **friend**. The word friend is a/an _____.

   a. verb b. noun c. adjective d. adverb

2. Adel listened to the song **happily**. The word happily is a/an _____.

   a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. verb

3. He is **at** school now. The word at is a/an _____.

   a. pronoun b. preposition c. verb d. noun

4. **Reading** is my hobby. Reading here is a/an _____.

   a. verb b. noun c. pronoun d. adverb

5. This is my book and that is **yours**. Yours here is a/an _____.

   a. verb b. adjective c. adverb d. pronoun

Reading

SB Page (6)

SB Page (6)

a. I noticed(1) that there were too many empty cans(2) and chocolate bar wrappers(3) on the streets in our city. Last summer, I decided to do something about it. I didn't want to wait for the adults to clean up our streets. I made some posters to ask young people to join(4) my group. Four people came to our first meeting(5). We picked up litter(6) from one part of the city, put it in bags, and took it to the recycling center(7). The week after that, eight people came and then after that there were twelve of us. The group grew and grew over the vacation(8) and now it has twenty-four members.



Elsa, Salzburg, Austria(9)

١- لاحظت
٢- علب صفيح فارغة
٣- اغلفة قوالب الشيكولاتة
٤- ينضم
٥- اجتماع
٦- قمامة
٧- مركز اعادة التدوير
٨- عطلة
٩- النمسا
١٠- شاركت فى
١١- الذكاء الاصطناعى
١٢- يراجع
١٣- يد العون
١٤- تغرب الشمس
١٥- مدينة مانشيستر المملكة المتحدة
١٦- زميل/شريك
١٧- الابجدية
١٨- ردد/كرر
١٩- بدلا من
٢٠- خصوصا

b. Last summer, I did something really fun. I took part(10) in a project where young people write stories using AI(11). Because computers write them, we had to check(12) to make sure that there were no mistakes in them. Before I started, I didn't know that AI can write really good stories. You imagine that only people can write stories, but AI can give a helping hand(13). I was surprised! Most of the stories I read were fine, but sometimes I found something strange in them. For example, there was one story where the sun never sets(14). Of course that's not possible, so I changed that part of the story.



Leon, Manchester, UK (15)

c. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city. In this project young people like me help adults who can't read and write Arabic. My partner(16) was Mrs Azza and she was very nice. First, we looked at the alphabet(17) together. I said the sound for each letter and Mrs Azza repeated(18) it. Sometimes, she nearly gave up, but then I said things like: "You're doing really well! Don't stop now." It was fun to be a teacher instead of(19) a student, especially(20) when I asked her: "Did you do your homework this week?", or "What did you learn yesterday?"

It was great to help Mrs Azza learn something new.



Gameela, Luxor, Egypt

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Osman about the summer activities

Ahmed : Hi Osman! Which activities did you do last summer?

Osman : ❶ ---------- ?

Ahmed : Wow! Did your team win?

Osman : ❷ ---------- .

Ahmed : What else did you do?

Osman : ❸ ---------- .

Ahmed : That's a great job. Did you take money for helping the community?

Osman : No. ❹ ---------- .

Ahmed : ❺ ---------- ?

Osman : Of course. I enjoyed the vacation a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman & SB Exercises

1. The coach admired the new player, who was very _____ .
   a. appeared b. talented c. ordinary d. bad
2. It was a/an _____ day, so I needed some rest.
   a. tired b. tiring c. easy d. simple
3. What activities do you like to _____ during the summer vacation?
   a. make b. do c. spend d. think
4. In the end, I had to _____ sure there were no mistakes.
   a. do b. give c. make d. to buying
5. It was a/an _____ summer vacation; I enjoyed it very much.
   a. bored b. boring c. excited d. amazing
6. There were too many empty cans and chocolate bar _____ on the street, so we had to clean it.
   a. runners b. wrappers c. winners d. walkers
7. _____ the end of the day, I felt tired, so I had some rest.
   a. Of b. From c. In d. At
8. You mustn't play in the street; it isn't _____ .
   a. easy b. unwanted c. near d. safe
9. I'd like _____ a new suit for my birthday party.
   a. buying b. to buy c. buy d. to buying

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. I trained hard and I won the tournament with the help of my _____.
    a. dentist b. coach c. activity d. medal
11. Teaching is a very _____ job. A teacher has to work at least eight hours a day.
    a. easy b. lazy c. expensive d. tiring
12. Our team will take part in the _____ I hope we will play well.
    a. tour b. tournament c. show d. meal
13. My parents gave me a helping _____ so I passed my exams.
    a. ear b. leg c. hand d. face
14. I can't _____ life without doctors. They help us to live healthily.
    a. imagine b. repeat c. pick d. kick
15. My dad _____ to work at a hospital. He likes helping people without taking money.
    a. volunteered b. hated c. scored d. kicked
16. **A:** Where did you spend the last summer _____? **B:** I went to Alex.
    a. tournament b. vacation c. exam d. match
17. Children should do different _____ in the summer to learn new things and have fun as well.
    a. problems b. mistakes c. troubles d. activities
18. The manager has a _____ with the workers to solve their problems.
    a. swimming b. meeting c. reading d. playing
19. Our _____ are the people who live next to us or near us.
    a. neighbors b. teachers c. relatives d. friends
20. Mohammed Salah _____ 32 goals in one season.
    a. scored b. tried c. taught d. wrote
21. When Amira revised the exam, she _____ three mistakes.
    a. won b. decided c. noticed d. trained
22. The opposite of the word "quiet" is _____..
    a. calm b. fun c. noisy d. bored
23. The prefix _____ gives the opposite of the word possible.
    a. in- b. im- c. ir- d. il-

Expressions & prepositions

24. I go to the park on Friday and I have a lot of _____.
    a. funny b. fans c. fun d. fins
25. When I meet strange people I feel _____ It's annoying.
    a. nervous b. happy c. good d. fine
26. Hamza is fast so he will take _____ in the running race.
    a. piece b. place c. part d. club
27. He tried his _____ but he lost the game.
    a. best b. better c. good d. well

28. I waited _____ my friend but he didn't come.
a. to b. for c. of d. from
29. I decided to join a sports club _____ of staying at home and watching TV.
a. repeated b. excited c. instead d. interested
30. I picked _____ litters to make the street clean.
a. on b. up c. after d. with



Language قواعد لغوية

The past simple

1- The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Form التكوين

التصريف الثانى للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر) **Subject**

1 الأفعال المنتظمة:

هى الأفعال التى يتكون منها الماضى بإضافة (ed) لآخر الفعل

work → worked walk → walked

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) نضيف (d) فقط للفعل

like → liked dance → danced

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف ساكن ثم حرف y نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)

study → studied carry → carried

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ حرف متحرك ثم حرف y نضيف (ed) بدون أى تغيير

enjoy → enjoyed play → played

- يضاعف الحرف الأخير فى بعض الأفعال عند إضافة (ed)

stop → stopped control → controlled

1 الأفعال غير المنتظمة

هى الأفعال التى لايضاف لها ed فى الماضى وتحفظ كما هى

go → went eat → ate do → did

am / is → was are → were have / has → had

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى فى الماضى:

Ex. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city.

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط لسرد أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي:

Ex. One day I saw a bird on a tree. It had many colors.

Affirmative الاثبات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday. **Ex.** I played games last week.

Negative النفى

- بشكل عام يحول الماضى البسيط للنفى بإستخدام **(didn't)** مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

➡ Subject + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't visit my family. **Ex.** He didn't eat fish.

- يمكن استخدم **(never)** بدلاً من **(didn't)** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

➡ Subject + never + الفعل في الماضي البسيط

Ex. Khalid never went to Aswan.

Question السؤال

السؤال بـ " هل...؟"

➡ Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام **(Wh-)**

➡ كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. **A:** What did you do yesterday? **B:** We went to the park.

لاحظ فى السؤال بمعنى لما لم تفعل...؟ نستخدم **didn't** في السؤال

Ex. Why didn't you come yesterday?

Notes

١. يمكن استخدام فعل **(be)** في السؤال كفعل أساسي باستخدام **(was / were)** كالتالي:

يستخدم فعل **(be)** للسؤال عن اسم أو صفة، ونستخدم **(Did)** للسؤال عن فعل

Ex. Was Hany a doctor?
- No, they weren't.

Ex. Were they late?
- Yes, they were.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

be	present	simple past
I	am	was
he - she - it	is	was
you - we - they	are	were

٢- لاحظ هناك اسماء تبدو فى معناها جمع لكنها تأخذ فعل مفرد:

The news / information / advice → was

٣. نستخدم فعل **(have)** في السؤال كفعل أساسي ونسأل عنه بـ **(did)**:

Ex. Did you have a bike in the past? - Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

٤. كلمة **(and)** تربط جملتين فى نفس الزمن (ماضي بسيط).

Ex. I went to the market and bought many things.

٥. ماضي **can** ← **could**

Ex. I could swim when I was young.

2- Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	فى الماضي	...ago	منذ .... (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	فى عام (٢٠١٠)	this morning	هذا الصباح
last...	... السابق		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman & SB Exercises

1. I didn't answer the question, but Kamal _____.
   a. done b. do c. did d. does
2. I _____ to my friends birthday party because I was ill.
   a. didn't go b. don't go c. went d. go
3. John _____ nothing to help his friends, so they were angry with him.
   a. doesn't do b. does c. didn't do d. did
4. My friend _____ to help me when I was in trouble, so I was sad.
   a. offered b. offers c. didn't offer d. doesn't offer
5. Why ..... to the club? Because I was too busy.
   a. won't you go b. you went c. did you go d. didn't you go
6. It..... very hot when I reached Aswan.
   a. were b. is c. will be d. was
7. Two months ago, I _____ helping out at a project in my city. SB
   a. start b. started c. starts d. starting
8. I _____ the sound for each letter and Mrs Azza repeated it. SB
   a. say b. saying c. says d. said
9. What did you _____ yesterday? SB
   a. did b. doing c. do d. does
10. The news I received _____ untrue, I couldn't believe it.
    a. was b. were c. are d. has

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. It _____ a great game and we won the cup.
    a. is b. were c. was d. has
12. I never _____ sushi but my brother ate it many times.
    a. try b. tried c. tries d. trying
13. I _____ sad when I lost my favorite pen.
    a. feel b. feels c. feeling d. felt
14. _____ you watch the match yesterday?
    a. Did b. Do c. Does d. Are
15. How old _____ you in 2022?
    a. was b. did c. were d. are
16. I _____ my homework and went to bed.
    a. do b. does c. doing d. did
17. Two months ago, she _____ learning French.
    a. starts b. started c. start d. starting
18. Mr Ahmed _____ us a new lesson yesterday.
    a. teaches b. teach c. taught d. teaching
19. When I was young I _____ the alphabet.
    a. learn b. learns c. learning d. learned
20. _____ you answer the exam yesterday?
    a. Can b. Was c. Could d. Will
21. Doaa _____ a fantastic weekend last month.
    a. has b. have c. having d. had
22. What time did you arrive _____ ?
    a. now b. tomorrow c. yesterday d. ago
23. Ahmed: Did you have a tablet? Osama: Yes, I _____ one.
    a. had b. did c. was d. has
24. A: _____ you ready for yesterday's exam? B: Yes, sure.
    a. Were b. Did c. Could d. Do
25. I _____ buy anything from this shop last night.
    a. don't b. didn't c. won't d. wasn't
26. What time _____ he get up last Monday?
    a. does b. do c. is d. did

2 Read and correct:

Longman & SB Exercises

1. Who did you _____ (went) to the beach with?
2. Dalia _____ (hurried) to catch the train; her leg was broken.
3. Which hobby _____ (does) he use to do when he was a student?

4. Hoda _____ (follows) the coach's instructions, so she didn't win the game.
5. Did you _____ (knew who win) the match yesterday?
6. The pharaohs _____ (build) the pyramids.
7. I _____ (have) to hurry because I was late for school.
8. Tamer _____ (caught) the train because he got up late.
9. There _____ (were) no flour left to make cakes.

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Last summer, I _____ (do) many activities.
11. First, we _____ (say) the alphabet then we wrote it.
12. What did you _____ (did) yesterday?
13. Fatma _____ (reads) a story and she liked it.
14. I met my friend Amr two days _____ (age).
15. I _____ (can) ride a bike when I was five.
16. Did you have a bike? Yes. I _____ (did) one.
17. My uncle bought a car _____ (tomorrow).
18. I last _____ (go) to the Zoo in 2010.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your summer vacation.

• السؤال والجواب عن العطلة الصيفية:

Question	Answer
- What did you do in the summer vacation? ماذا فعلت في العطلة الصيفية؟	- I helped my grandma in her garden. لقد ساعدت جدتي في حديقتها. - We planted lots of flowers. لقد زرعنا الكثير من الزهور.
- What activities do you like to do? ما هي الأنشطة التي تحب القيام بها؟	- I play in tournaments and I help out at my family's workshop ألعب في البطولات وأساعد في ورشة عمل عائلتي.
- Which activities would you like to do? ما هي الأنشطة التي ترغب في القيام بها؟	- I would like to write stories using AI. أريد أن أكتب قصصًا باستخدام الذكاء الاصطناعي.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Karma and Hana are talking about helping in the community garden.

Karma : Hi Hana! What did you do yesterday?

Hana : ❶ .....

Karma : How did you help?

Hana : ❷ .....

Karma : ❸ .....?

Hana : We took the litter to the recycling center.

Karma : ❹ .....?

Hana : I went there once a week.

Karma : Can I come with the next time?

Hana : ❺ .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

tournament - teach - activities - great - taught

It's important to do something useful in the summer vacation. My last summer vacation was ❶ _____ I did many ❷ _____. I wrote stories using AI. I ❸ _____adults to read and write Arabic. I played in a ❹ _____ and I won a medal.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I joined a _____ to learn music. I can play the piano now.
   a. shop b. workshop c. garage d. market
2. **A:** _____ you have much money, what would you do? **B:** I would help the poor.
   a. Imagine b. Score c. Volunteer d. Repeat
3. People who are _____ work less because they are skillful.
   a. planted b. talented c. excited d. funny
4. My brother uses _____ to write stories.
   a. PM b. AM c. AI d. BC
5. My brother is a footballer and he is going to take part in a _____.
   a. tower b. train c. tournament d. wedding

6. Many people think that Messi is a _____ player. He has many skills.
   a. surprised b. funny c. talented d. strange
7. I never _____ climbing a mountain when I was young.
   a. try b. tries c. tried d. trying
8. **A:** What did you _____ for lunch? **B:** I ate pasta and chicken.
   a. has b. had c. having d. have
9. He didn't stay at home but he _____ swimming.
   a. went b. go c. goes d. going
10. _____ you happy when you got the prize?
   a. Did b. Do c. Are d. Were
11. In the past, they _____ horses and camels to travel.
   a. used b. use c. uses d. using
12. People from our community _____ flowers and vegetables last week.
   a. planted b. plant c. plants d. planting

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My partner was Mrs Azza and she _____ (were) very nice. SB
2. Most of the stories I read _____ (was) fine. SB
3. Where did you _____ (had) your lunch?
4. The game _____ (is) great and I scored two goals.
5. Our teacher last year _____ (did) Mr Adel.
6. _____ (Do) you go to the park yesterday?

5 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your summer vacation"

_____

_____

_____

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- What activities did you do? What else did you do?

- Did you try something else?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية

- I played in a big tournament .....

- I also helped out at a community garden.....

- To give back to my community, I taught some adults .....

- I tried writing some cool stories .....

Lessons 3&4

SB pages 8-11

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ	catacombs (n)	سراديب وغرف دفن الموتى
smart (adj)	ذكى / بارع	temple (n)	معبد
monument (n)	أثر تاريخى	obelisk (n)	مسلة
language (n)	لغة	statue (n)	تمثال
identify (ied)	يحدد	active (adj)	نشيط
present (ed)	يقدم / يعرض	friendly (adj)	ودود
organize (d)	ينظم	problem solving (n)	حل المشكلات
recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير	helpful (adj)	متعاون
edit (ed)	يعدل/يحرر	archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار
bury (ied)	يدفن	effect (n)	تأثير
pray (ed)	يصلى / يتعبد	information (n)	معلومات
lazy (adj)	كسول	solution (n)	حل

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

care (n) (v.d)	رعاية / عناية / يعتنى	model (n)	نموذج
repairs (n)	اصلاحات	housework (n)	اعمال منزلية
choice (n)	اختيار	underground tunnels	انفاق تحت الارض
skill (n)	مهارة	the dead	الموتى
daily life	الحياة اليومية	reason (n)	سبب
steps (n)	خطوات	bank (n)	ضفة النهر
flow chart	رسم بيانى	wall (n)	حائط/جدار
online (adj)	عبر/ على الانترنت	religion (n)	دين
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
dish (n)	طبق	how often?	كم مرة؟

weather (n)	طقس	solve (d)	يحل
organized (adj)	منظم	discuss (ed)	يناقش
tourist (n)	سائح	explain (ed)	يشرح
floor (n)	ارضية الحجرة	collect (ed)	يجمع
mention (ed)	يذكر	protect (ed)	يحمى

Definitions

statue	تمثال	model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone
obelisk	مسلة	tall stone monument with a top that is usually in the shape of a pyramid
catacombs	سراديب وغرف دفن الموتى	underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead
temple	معبد	place where people come together to pray

Expressions & Prepositions

go online	يدخل على الانترنت	how about sports	ماذا عن الرياضة
that's a pity	يا للأسف	sounds great / useful	يبدو رائع/مفيد
give a try	حاول	cut away	يتآكل / يقلص
give a reason for	يعطى سبب لـ	four times a week	اربع مرات فى الاسبوع
on the west bank	فى الضفة الغربية (للنهر)	at the same time	فى نفس الوقت
think about	يفكر فى	get up	يستيقظ
important for/to	هام لـ	solution for	حل لـ
make it a better place	يجعلها مكان افضل	look after	يعتنى بـ
tell about	يخبر عن	in a shape of	على شكل
bad for	ضار لـ	in the holidays	فى ايام الاجازات
do sports	يمارس رياضة		

Bit by Bit

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
ancient قديم/اثرى	old	modern / new حديث/جديد
interesting شيق	exciting	boring ممل
useful مفيد	helpful	useless غير مفيد
active نشيط	energetic	lazy كسول
friendly ودود	kind	unfriendly غير ودود
helpful متعاون/مفيد	useful	helpless غير متعاون
smart ذكى/بارع	clever	stupid غبى
near قريب	close to	far بعيد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-tion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	information
-ed	تحول الفعل الى صفة	organized
-ful	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة	helpful
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	slowly

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
give	يعطى	gave	given
cut away	يتآكل/يقلص	cut away	cut away
think	يفكر	thought	thought
leave	يغادر	left	left

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 The + adjective

عند وضع (the) قبل الصفة فإننا نشير الى فئة او مجموعة معينة ... الفقراء The poor

الاغنياء the rich الموتى the dead

Ex. We should help the poor.

2 care / repair / present

بعض الكلمات تعتبر افعال و اسماء فى نفس الوقت

- **care** يعتنى/عناية

Ex. Some parents don't care what their kids do.

- Old people need special medical care.

- **repair** يصلح / **repairs** اصلاحات

Ex. I want to repair my car.

- They are doing some repairs at the school.

- **present (v. ed)** يقدم / **present (n)** هدية **present (adj)** موجود

Ex. I wanted to present my friend and give him a present but he wasn't present.

3 daily / everyday / every day

كلمة (everyday) صفة ومعناها يومي وتأتي قبل الاسم:

Ex. Playing chess is important in my everyday life.

كلمة (every day) ظرف وتعنى كل يوم وغالبًا تكون آخر الجملة:

Ex. I practice English every day. (not everyday)

لاحظ أن كلمة (daily) تساوى الأثنين فى المعنى حسب السياق:

Ex. Doing exercise is my daily routine.

- I do exercise daily.

4 in the holidays / on holiday

- **in the holidays** فى ايام الاجازة

Ex. I like to play video games in the holidays.

- **on holiday** فى اجازة

Ex. We missed Mr Osman when he was on holiday.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The ancient Egyptians buried _____ in pyramids.
   a. dead b. death c. die d. the dead
2. You should take _____ when you cross the road.
   a. careful b. careless c. care d. caring
3. It's my _____ routine to wake up at 6 o'clock.
   a. day b. daily c. every day d. dairy
4. What do you like to do _____ the holidays?
   a. on b. in c. at d. from

Reading

SB Page (8)

Read the information about an ancient building in Egypt

The Temple(1) of Edfu is an Ancient(2) Egyptian temple in the town of Edfu. The town is on the west bank(3) of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2250 years old. It is important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its walls(4) gives us very interesting and useful information about language(5) and religion(6) over 2000 years ago.



١- معبد
٢- قديم
٣- الضفة الغربية
٤- جدران/حوائط
٥-لغة
٦- دين

SB Page (8)

Hadaya : What did you do in the summer holiday, Mariam?

Mariam : I visited my aunt and uncle in Edfu. It's near to Aswan and there's a beautiful temple(1) there.

Hadaya : Oh, yeah. It's an ancient temple, isn't it?

Mariam : Yes, and it tells us a lot about what life was like in Ancient Egypt, so it's a special place. Unfortunately(2), there are some problems(3) at the Temple of Edfu. The weather(4) in Egypt is bad for the stone walls. The wind and sand very slowly cut the stone away(5).

١. معبد
٢. لسوء الحظ
٣. مشاكل
٤. طقس
٥. تقلص الاحجار

Hadaya : That's too bad. Do lots of tourists come to the temple?

Mariam : Yes, and all those people's feet are bad for the stone, too.

Hadaya : Is anyone doing anything to protect(6) the building?

Mariam : Yes. Volunteers(7) work with archaeologists(8) on the buildings. Some of them are students like us who help in the summer holidays. They can stop these bad effects(9) on some buildings, but there isn't enough time or people to help all the buildings at the same time.

Hadaya : That's a pity(10). And the buildings are so old, aren't they?

Mariam : Yes, because they're very old, they need lots of care(11) and repairs(12).

٦. يحمى
٧. متطوعون
٨. علماء اثار
٩. تأثيرات سيئة
١٠. يا للاسف
١١. عناية
١٢. اصلاحات

SB Page (10)

Basel : So, Younis, what's your answer to the first question: did you help other people in the summer vacation(1)?

Younis : Yes, of course I did. I helped out at my parents' restaurant. I cleaned the dishes and cleaned the floor in the restaurant at the end of the day. I often went to other shops to buy things that my parents needed, too. I would say I often helped my family and friends in the summer vacation.

Basel : Great, so you helped your family and you learned how to work in a restaurant.

Younis : Yes, that's right.

Basel : How about sports? How often did you do sports?

Younis : Every day, I think. I always played sport in the summer vacation. I love playing football with my friends near my building(2).

Basel : So, you were active(3) in the holidays?

Younis : Yes, definitely(4).

Basel : The next question is: How often did you do something to help your community?

Younis : I often volunteered to help at a project(5) in my community. People walk around the streets, collect(6) litter and recycle(7) it. Then our streets are cleaner and we can use the paper and plastic again.

Basel : Sounds great(8). Can I join in too? I never did anything in my community in the holidays, but I want to start helping out.

Younis : Of course, Basel.

Basel : The last question is: did you learn anything interesting online(9) this summer? How often did you go online?

Younis : I sometimes went online at home in the evening. I was usually tired in the evening. But sometimes I watched some videos about how to make videos with a phone and how to edit(10) the videos so they look good.

Basel : That sounds useful.

Younis : Yes, I want to give it a try myself now.

١. عطلة
٢. مبنى
٣. نشيط
٤. بالتاكيد
٥. مشروع
٦. يجمع القمامة
٧. يعيد تدوير
٨. يبدو رائعا
٩. على الانترنت
١٠. يحرر/يعدل

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hamza is talking to Islam about visiting ancient places.

Hamza : Hi Islam! Did you visit ancient places last summer?

Islam : ❶ ---------- .

Hamza : What places did you visit?

Islam : ❷ ---------- .

Hamza : ❸ ---------- ?

Islam : The temple of Edfu is in Aswan.

Hamza : ❹ ---------- ?

Islam : It's about 2,250 years old.

Hamza : Can we visit it together?

Islam : ❺ ---------- .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman Exercises

1. _____ are underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead.
   a. Walls b. Statues c. Obelisks d. Catacombs
2. What can we do to _____ the environment?
   a. communicate b. connect c. protect d. predict
3. Egyptian _____ have discovered historic objects in the tomb.
   a. archaeologists b. psychologists c. chemists d. pilots
4. Edfu is on the west _____ of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan.
   a. coast b. bank c. wall d. beach
5. I sometimes _____ up late in the summer vacation.
   a. get b. stand c. hurry d. go
6. Walking is my daily sport. 'Daily' here can be replaced with "_____".
   a. rare b. usually c. everyday d. every day
7. A/An _____ is a tall monument with a top that is usually in the shape of a pyramid.
   a. tomb b. obelisk c. funnel d. tunnel
8. Rami is so _____; he never does any activity.
   a. lazy b. active c. liked d. early

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. The Abu Simbel _____ is made of stone and it is very big.
   a. garden b. beach c. statue d. bank
10. Ziad is _____. He always helps his friends.
   a. lazy b. selfish c. helpful d. negative
11. The Sphinx and the Pyramids are very old _____ in Egypt.
   a. parks b. monuments c. markets d. homes
12. Recycling litter is the best _____ for the problem of pollution.
   a. weather b. building c. solution d. reason
13. A good manager knows how to _____ problems.
   a. make b. decide c. repeat d. solve
14. The opposite of the word "active" is _____.
   a. funny b. excited c. lazy d. useful
15. Ancient Egyptians _____ in temples a long time ago.
   a. prayed b. acted c. cycled d. organized
16. This student is very _____ He answered all the questions correctly.
   a. lazy b. stupid c. smart d. useless
17. We love our teacher because he is _____ and helpful.
   a. lazy b. friendly c. useless d. boring
18. Lots of _____ visit Egypt every year because of its fine weather.
   a. volunteers b. temples c. tourists d. monuments
19. There is a lot of interesting and useful _____ on the walls of the temple about the ancient Egyptians.
   a. weather b. information c. repairs d. towers
20. Solving problems is a very important _____ that you should improve.
   a. care b. present c. chart d. skill
21. Mr Osman will _____ his ideas to the manager at next week's meeting.
   a. win b. present c. notice d. train
22. The food was delicious, _____ it was too spicy for me.
   a. luckily b. unknown c. unfortunately d. good
23. What is the _____ of watching too much TV?
   a. effect b. protect c. collect d. ticket
24. Can you _____ this video to make it shorter?
   a. cycle b. edit c. burn d. delete
25. _____ plastic and litter is good for the environment.
   a. Throwing b. Burning c. Recycling d. Reading

Expression and Prepositions

26. The moon is in the _____ of a circle.

a. size b. shape c. color d. time

27. The two runners finished the race _____ the same time.

a. on b. for c. at d. of

28. When my parents go out, I look _____ my little sister.

a. after b. at c. for d. up

29. Hossam was doing a school project so he went _____ for more information.

a. line b. offline c. online d. alone

30. Many animals and plants live on the _____ of the River Nile.

a. banks b. flats c. gates d. buildings



Language قواعد لغوية

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار لنوضح متى وكم مرة قام الشخص بفعل شئ .
- يمكن ان نستخدم ظروف التكرار فى المضارع والماضى وندرس فى هذا الدرس الماضى البسيط
- تنقسم ظروف التكرار إلى ظروف محددة (Definite) أى أنها تحدد عدد مرات حدوث الفعل .... مثل: once / twice

وهناك ظروف غير محددة (Indefinite) وهى لا تحدد عدد المرات ولكن توضح نسبة حدوث الفعل من:

Always (100%) —إلى→ Never (0%)

Definite	محددة	Indefinite	غير محدد
once	مرة	always	دائما
twice	مرتين	usually	عادة
three times	ثلاث مرات	often	غالبا
every day / week	كل يوم/اسبوع	sometimes	احيانا
		rarely	نادرا
		never	ابدا

always (100%) → usually (80%) → often (70%) → sometimes (50%) → occasionally (30%) → hardly ever/rarely (10%) → never (0%)

100% always	I always looked after my little sister. اعتنيت دائما باختى الصغيرة (فعلت ذلك دائما).
90% usually	I was usually tired in the evening. كنت عادة اشعر بالتعب فى المساء. (فى اوقات كثيرة وليس طوال الوقت)
70% often	I didn't often watch television. كنت غالبا اشاهد التلفاز. (فى اغلب الوقت)
50% sometimes	I sometimes got up early in the summer vacation. كنت احيانا استيقظ مبكرا فى عطلة الصيف (نصف ايام الاسبوع)
30% occasionally	I occasionally ate junk food. تناولت اكلات سريعة بين الحين والاخر (مرات قليلة)
10% hardly ever/ rarely	I hardly ever traveled abroad. نادرا ما سافرت للخارج. (نادرا ما حدث ذلك)
0% never	I never visited the Pyramids. لم ازر الاهرام ابدا (لم افعل ذلك ولا مرة)

- تأتى ظروف التكرار بعد فعل يكون (verb to be) وقبل الافعال الاخرى

Verb to be → Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency → Other verbs

- He was usually lazy but he is active now.
- He always came first in the running race.

How often/ How many times + did + فاعل + inf. ؟ فعل فى المصدر

- نستخدم ظروف التكرار للاجابة عن سؤال (How often? / How many times?)

- How often did you leave your town?

Not often. I usually stayed in my town in the summer vacation

- لاحظ فى النفى نضع (didn't) قبل ظروف التكرار

The kids didn't usually go to bed early.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman & SB Exercises

1. Reham _____ failed during her school years; she always got full marks.

a. ever b. usually c. always d. never

2. How _____ times did you go to the club last month?

a. often b. many c. much d. every

3. I _____ invited my friends to study with me at home; I did this on some occasions, but not always.

a. usually b. sometimes c. never d. ever

4. I _____ my homework before I went to bed; it was my habit to do it day by day.

a. always do b. usually did c. never did d. didn't do

5. Nazeeh hardly _____ arrived late; he always came on time.

a. never b. ever c. usually d. every

6. I rarely played tennis when I was young. "Rarely" means _____.

a. always d. never c. not often d. usually

7. I _____ helped with the housework. I did that every day. SB

a. never b. always c. sometimes d. don't

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Mr Ahmed didn't travel abroad. He _____ left Egypt.

a. always b. usually c. sometimes d. never

9. Adham _____ late for school when he was young.

a. never was b. is never c. was never d. never is

10. **A**: How _____ did you go swimming? **B**: I sometimes went swimming.

a. long b. far c. about d. often

11. Sara usually _____ a book before she went to bed.

a. reads b. reading c. read d. to read

12. My mother _____ drove a car. She didn't know how to drive.

a. never b. sometimes c. often d. always

13. What did _____ do in the summer vacation?

a. you often b. often you c. usually you d. always you

14. I _____ sports and ate healthy food to keep fit.

a. did b. do c. does d. doing

15. Kareem _____ me to play tennis yesterday.

a. teach b. teaches c. taught d. teaching

16. I didn't _____ at home on the weekend .

a. stay b. stayed c. staying d. stays

17. Mr Khalid is a good teacher. He was _____ last year.

a. always friendly b. never friendly

c. friendly always d. friendly usually

18. I _____ played games on my mobile phone. I liked this a lot.

a. never b. usually c. don't d. doesn't

19. My uncle _____ to work on a community project last year.

a. volunteers b. volunteer c. volunteered d. volunteering

20. I ate a lot of candies and I _____ tired yesterday.

a. am b. were c. was d. didn't

21. Our neighbor _____ to make the local area cleaner.

a. often helped b. helped often c. helped never d. helped usually

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

Longman Exercises

1. Shadi _____ (always) reached school late; his teachers were always pleased with him.
2. Faten _____ (rarely) played volleyball when she was young; it was her favorite sport.
3. How _____ (many) did you go to the school library?
4. Ahmed: How often did you leave your town? Hatem: Not _____ (every). I usually stayed in my town in the summer.
5. Hana _____ (always is) busy studying before exams when she was a student.
6. Did you _____ (never) join in school activities when you were a student?
7. Gamal _____ (visits usually) us when he wasn't busy.



Bit by Bit Exercises

8. **A:** How _____ (long) did you visit Aswan? **B:** I always visited it.
9. He _____ (never was) lazy. He was always active.
10. _____ (Do) you learn anything online? Yes, I learnt English.
11. I tried to solve the problem, but I _____ (can't).
12. What _____ (do) you do yesterday?
13. Fareeda didn't _____ (shared) her ideas with her friends.
14. Ali studied hard last year. He _____ (always) got low marks.
15. _____ (Was) you good at English last year?

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about how often you did something:

• السؤال والجواب عن عدد مرات فعلك لشئ:

Question	Answer
- How often did you do sports? كم مرة مارست الرياضة؟	- I sometimes did sports. كنت احيانا امارس الرياضة
- How often did you do something to help your community? كم مرة فعلت شيئا لمساعدة مجتمعك؟	- I often ..... to help my community. كثيراً ما كنت أفعل ..... لمساعدة مجتمعي
- Did you learn anything interesting online this summer? هل تعلمت أي شيء مثير للاهتمام على الإنترنت هذا الصيف؟	- Yes, I did. نعم فعلت ذلك
How often did you go online? كم مرة دخلت على الانترنت؟	- I went online four times a day. دخلت على الانترنت اربع مرات فى اليوم.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Shady and Belal are talking about doing sports.

Shady : Hi Belal! Did you do sports last summer?

Belal : ❶ .....

Shady : What kind of sport did you do?

Belal : ❷ .....

Shady : ❸ .....?

Belal : I played football four times a week.

Shady : ❹ .....?

Belal : In a sports club.

Shady : Who did you play with?

Belal : ❺ .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

obelisk - traveled - temples - monuments - travels

Egypt is a very old and great country. There are many ❶ _____ in Egypt. If you visit Aswan, you will see ❷ _____ and statues. I ❸ _____ to Aswan last year. I saw many interesting things. The most interesting thing was an ❹ _____ which was a tall monument with a top that is usually in the shape of a pyramid.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An _____ is a model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone.
   a. catacomb b. temple c. statue d. obelisk
2. We know about ancient Egyptians from the writing on the _____ of temples.
   a. walls b. towers c. flats d. roofs
3. I don't know the _____ for this maths problem. Can you help me?
   a. situation b. solution c. pollution d. opinion

4. What forms of _____ do you use? I use my mobile phone, tablet and laptop.
   a. music b. technology c. time d. clothes
5. The suffix _____ turns the word help into an adjective.
   a. -ly b. -ful c. -ion d. -en
6. In the past, they _____ horses and camels to travel.
   a. used b. use c. uses d. using
7. She didn't write or _____ a story yesterday.
   a. reads b. read c. reading d. to read
8. Samy never _____ chess when he was eight.
   a. played b. play c. plays d. playing
9. What _____ you buy at the market last week?
   a. do b. were c. did d. does
10. **A:** Did you travel to Luxor? **B:** No. I _____ traveled there.
   a. always b. often c. sometimes d. never

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I _____ (see) this film four times last week.
2. He _____ (often was) nervous but now he is calm.
3. Ali didn't _____ (wore) his coat because it wasn't cold.
4. Ibrahim _____ (is) happy when dad bought him a bike.
5. How often _____ (do) you practice football last year?

5 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"An ancient place you visited"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية
- What type of ancient building was this?
- Where was it?
- How old was it?
- Why was it a special ancient building?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية

- It was a temple.....
- It was about 3000 years.....
- The temple was very special.....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 12-15

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية			
informal (adj)	غير رسمى	rising star (n)	نجمة صاعدة
improve (d)	يحسن / يطور	champion (n)	بطل رياضى
amaze (d)	يدهش	achievement (n)	انجاز
achieve (d)	ينجز / يحقق	opponent (n)	خصم او منافس فى لعبة
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	victory (n)	فوز / انتصار
		focus (n) (v)	تركيز / يركز

Word or phrase الكلمة أو العبارة		Short form صيغة مختصرة
بالمناسبة	= by the way	BTW
جدا	= very	V
ساتحدث اليك لاحقا	= talk to you later	TTYL
اشكرك	= thanks	Thanx
الضحك بصوت مرتفع	= laughing out loud	LOL
اراك لاحقا	= see you	CU

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية			
quite (adv)	الى حد ما	table tennis (n)	تنس الطاولة
instead (adv)	بدلا من ذلك	The United Nations (n)	الامم المتحدة
adults (n)	اشخاص بالغين	talent (n)	موهبة
clearly (adv)	بوضوح	although (conj.)	على الرغم من
ping-pong (n)	بنج بونج (تنس طاولة)	dream (n) (v)	حلم / يحلم
short form	صيغة مختصرة	however (conj.)	ولكن/ومع ذلك
African (adj)	افريقى	journey (n)	رحلة
Arab player	لاعب عربى	road (n)	طريق
award (n)	جائزة	coach (n)	مدرب
Lagos (n)	مدينة ليجوس (فى نيجيريا)	attention (n)	انتباه
succeed (ed)	ينجح	success (n)	نجاح
enjoy (ed)	يستمتع بـ	speed (n)	سرعة
hope (d)	يأمل	competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
connect (ed)	يتصل بـ	national (adj)	وطنى
practice (d)	يمارس	qualities (n)	مميزات

explain (ed)	يشرح	ranking (n)	تصنيف/ترتيب
finish (ed)	ينهى/ينتهى	sportspeople (n)	رياضيون
include (d)	يتضمن/يشمل	ITTF (International Table Tennis Federation)	الاتحاد الدولى لتنس الطاولة

Definitions

focus	تركيز	giving special attention to something you do
victories	انتصارات	successes in competitions
champion	بطل رياضى	the person who wins a competition
achievement	انجاز	a thing that someone has done very well
opponents	خصوم	the people you play against in a competition

Expressions & Prepositions

achieve a goal	يحقق هدف	write in Arabic	يكتب باللغة العربية
be back at school	يرجع للمدرسة	for the rest of	لبقية الـ
since then,	منذ ذلك الحين	came top of	يأتى على قمة
one year later	بعد سنة	even if	حتى لو
(be) born on 12th December	ولدت فى 12 ديسمبر	stop from + v.ing	يمنع من
What an achievement!	يا له من انجاز!	feel about	يشعر بخصوص
speak about	يتحدث عن	at the age of	فى عمر ...
come true	يتحقق/يصبح حقيقة	in the end	فى النهاية
do well	يحسن صنعا	take things step by step	يأخذ الامور خطوة بخطوة
work hard	يعمل بجد		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
difficult صعب	hard	easy سهل
direct مباشر	straight	indirect غير مباشر
quickly بسرعة	fast	slowly ببطء
clear واضح	obvious	unclear غامض/غير واضح
high مرتفع	long	low منخفض
formal رسمى	official	informal غير رسمى
focus يركز	pay attention	ignore يتجاهل

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-tion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	information / competition
-ing/-ed	تحول الفعل الى صفة	rising / amazed
inter-	تعنى بين	international
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	clearly
-an	تشير الى شخص او شئ ينتمى الى مكان	African
-ment	تحول الفعل الى اسم	achievement
in-	تعطى عكس المعنى	informal
-ful	تحول الفعل الى صفة	successful / useful

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
let	يدع/يترك	let	let
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
become	يصبح	became	become
come	يأتى	came	come
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
show	يظهر/يبين	showed	shown

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 award / reward

- **award** جائزة رسمية

Ex. She won an award for winning the competition.

- **reward** مكافأة تشجيعية

Ex. My parents gave me a reward for passing the exams.

2 champion / hero

- **champion** بطل رياضى

Ex. Sara Samir is an Olympic champion.

- **Hero** بطل قام بعمل شجاع

Ex. My father rescued us from the fire. He is a real hero.

3 However / Although

- **However** مع ذلك/لكن

تأتى عادة فى أول الجملة ويأتى بعدها فاصلة.

Ex. We didn't like the hotel. However, we had a good time.

- **Although + subject + verb.**
بالرغم من او لكن

تأتى أول أو منتصف الجملة ولا ياتى بعدها فاصلة.

Ex. Although he had a bad luck, he won the game.

Ex. I always pass the exam, although I don't study hard.

4 Too + adjective

نستخدم الصفة + (too) للتعبير عن ان الشئ زائد عن الحد المطلوب.

Ex. The table was too high for her!

5 enjoy / decide

- **enjoy + v.ing**

يأتى بعد (enjoy) فعل + (ing)

Ex. She enjoyed practicing table tennis.

- **decide + to + inf.**

يأتى بعد (decide) فعل فى المصدر + to

Ex. He decided to make a ping-pong table.

6 not only..... but also ليس فقط..... ولكن أيضًا

نستخدم التركيب السابق لاضافة معلومة والتاكيد عليها.

Ex. My uncle is not only a writer but also an actor.

7 everyone / everybody

الضمير (everyone) وما يماثله من كلمات يأخذ فعل مفرد ويعود عليه ضمير جمع.

Ex. Everyone is ready for the trip.

Ex. Everyone should do their best.

Reading

SB Page (12)

A Rising Star![1]

When Hana Goda first started playing table tennis at the age of four; her talent[2] for the sport quickly became clear.
However[3]; there was a problem. The table was too high for her!
"What can we do?" her coaches[4] asked, seeing how much she wanted to play.
In the end, they made the legs shorter so that the table was lower.
Since then[5], Hana has improved[6] year after year, and she amazed[7] the table tennis world by her speed and focus[8].
Born on 12th December 2007, Hana became Egypt's youngest ever national champion[9] in 2019, at the age of 12. Just one year later; she came top of the ITTF[10] (International Table Tennis Federation) under- 15 women's world rankings[11] - the first African and Arab player to do so. Then, in 2022, she won a top award[12] at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos[13]. What an achievement[14]!
The United Nations chose Hana to take part[15] in Shabab Balad, a project in Egypt to help young people learn and connect in the world of work.
Although Hana is still much younger than many of her opponents[16], she works just as hard as any older player. She has also spoken about how important it is for her to take things step by step[17], always learning and trying hard to achieve[18] her victories[19].
Hana really enjoys practicing for long hours every day, even if[20] it is hard work. She is showing young people in Egypt that not only is it possible to make your dreams come true[21], but you can also enjoy the journey even if the road is difficult.

١. نجمة صاعدة
٢. موهبة
٣. على الرغم من
٤. مدرب
٥. منذ ذلك الحين
٦. تحسنت/تطورت
٧. أدهشت
٨. تركيز
٩. بطل قومي
١٠. الاتحاد الدولي لتنس الطاولة
١١. ترتيب
١٢. جائزة
١٣. كأس الأمم الأفريقية في لاجوس
١٤. إنجاز
١٥. شاركت في
١٦. منافسون
١٧. خطوة بخطوة
١٨. تحقق
١٩. انتصارات
٢٠. حتى لو
٢١. أصبحت حقيقة

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Hana became Egypt's national champion in ..... أصبحت هنا بطلة مصر محليا في عام .....
a. 2007 b. 2019 c. 2022 d. 2023
2. How did Hana improve year after year? كيف تطورت هنا من عام لآخر؟
3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأخيرة فى جملة

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. Hana started playing table tennis at the age of four. بدأت هنا في لعب تنس الطاولة في عمر أربع سنوات.
2. Hana amazed the table tennis world by her speed and focus.
أدهشت هنا عالم تنس الطاولة بسرعتها وتركيزها.
3. Hana won a top award at the African Cup.
فازت بالجائزة الأولى في كأس أفريقيا.
4. She always learns and tries hard to achieve her victories
تتعلم وتحاول بجد أن تحقق الانتصارات.

Answers:
1. b. 2019 2. Through traning and hard work.
3. Hana loves practicing hard and shows yong people that dreams can came true.

SB Page (14)

New Message

To : Ashraf Cc Bcc

From : Waleed

Subject : RE: My summer

Hi Ashraf,

Hope you and your family are OK. We're all fine. I'm back at school this week after the summer vacation(1). The summer vacation was good, but I'm happy to be back at school now. I can see all of my friends and it's good to learn something new every day again.

BTW(2), I learned quite a lot in the summer vacation, but I didn't learn the things you usually study at school. Instead(3), I volunteered to teach adults to read and write in Arabic and I learned how to explain things clearly(4). I think that will be useful to me now we're back at school.

Of course, I also had some fun in the summer vacation. I often helped my dad in his workshop(5). We both enjoy playing ping-pong, so we decided to make a ping-pong table. It was hard work, but we were v(6) happy with the table when it was finished. We were able to play ping-pong every day for the rest of the vacation.

How was your summer?

TTYL!(7)
Waleed

Send

١. عطلة
٢. بالمناسبة
٣. بدلا من ذلك
٤. بوضوح
٥. ورشة عمل
٦. جدًا
٧. سأتحدث إليك لاحقًا

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasin is asking Eyad about his favorite sport.

Yasin : What's your favorite sport, Eyad?

Eyad : ❶ ---------- .

Yasin : Where do you practice it?

Eyad : ❷ ---------- .

Yasin : ❸ ---------- ?

Eyad : Hana Goda is my favorite player.

Yasin : ❹ ---------- ?

Eyad : Hana became Egypt's youngest ever national champion in 2019.

Yasin : Wow! I think it's a great achievement.

Eyad : ❺ ---------- .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Longman Exercises

1. Hana Goda and Ahmed El Gendy have made amazing _____ .

   a. achievements b. encouragements c. failures d. punishments

2. Although my brother is younger than his _____, he plays better than them all.

   a. opponents b. referees c. enemies d. assistants

3. Our Egyptian army achieved a great _____ in 1973.

   a. harm b. enemy c. victory d. loss

4. Ahmed El Gendy is an Egyptian _____ who won Egypt's first gold medal at the Paris Olympics.

   a. trainer b. swimmer c. coach d. champion

5. Don't let difficulties _____ you from achieving your dreams.

   a. delete b. arrive c. stop d. encourage

6. I'm very happy; all my dreams have _____ true.

   a. said b. thought c. come d. seen

7. In 2022, Hana Goda won a top _____ at the International Table Tennis Federation.

   a. award b. present c. money d. statue

8. The young man received his reward proudly. "Reward" here is a/an _____ .

   a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. adjective

9. Do you think it is possible to _____ earthquakes?

   a. disappear b. think c. agree d. predict

10. We usually use _____ language when writing emails to close friends.

    a. formal b. informal c. wrong d. no

11. Does your email _____ information about your summer vacation?

    a. include b. consist c. talk d. appear

12. If you work hard, you will achieve success. When we add the suffix '-ful' to "success", we change it into a/an _____ .

    a. adverb b. noun c. verb d. adjective

13. You should focus on your work. "Focus" here is opposite in meaning to:

a. disappear b. think c. ignore d. try

14. Everyone could achieve great things if _____ worked hard.

a. they're b. she c. he d. they

15. To _____ is to give special attention to something you do.

a. achieve b. focus c. ignore d. keep

Bit by Bit Exercises

16. A /An _____ star is someone who is becoming very successful very quickly

a. boring b. rising c. lazy d. helpful

17. _____ is a sport where players hit a small ball on a table.

a. Football b. Basketball c. Handball d. Table tennis

18. My biggest _____ is to travel around the world.

a. dream b. nightmare c. medal d. champion

19. The player's world _____ improved after winning the tournament.

a. reading b. swimming c. ranking d. feeling

20. She started playing tennis at the _____ of five.

a. old b. age c. time d. size

21. _____ of going to the movies, we stayed home.

a. Because b. Also c. Whether d. Instead

22. Helping people is one of the most important _____ of a kind person.

a. qualities b. weaknesses c. hobbies d. skills

23. If you don't work hard, you won't _____ your goal in life.

a. loss b. achieve c. let d. speak

24. I played against a talented _____ but I won.

a. opponent b. competition c. medal d. waiter

25. A/An _____ is something successful that you have done.

a. mistake b. tournament c. achievement d. tour

26. To _____ means to get better at something.

a. get worse b. improve c. stay the same d. lose

27. Ahmed El Gendy _____ the world when he won the gold medal in the Olympics.

a. amazed b. improved c. let d. formed

28. It's not enough to have a _____ to succeed, you should work hard as well.

a. tournament b. talent c. problem d. statue

29. Many _____ went to France to compete in the Olympics.

a. sportspeople b. students c. engineers d. farmers

30. I use social media to _____with people from different countries.

a. connect b. compete c. improve d. organize

31. Regular _____ and eating healthy food is important for sportspeople.

a. travel b. sign c. practice d. vacation

5 Write an email of (80-90) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend Hussein about your favorite sport.

Your name is Mohammed and your email address is mohammed77@gmail.com.

Your friend's email address is hussein82@yahoo.com

New Message

To : _____ Cc Bcc

From : _____

Subject : _____

Send

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- What is your favorite sport?
- Where can you play it?
- What do you need to play it?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية

- My favorite sport is.....
- It can be .....
- All you need is a small table .....

Review on Unit 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

coach (n)	مدرب	rising star (n)	نجمة صاعدة
talented (adj)	موهوب	champion (n)	بطل رياضى
tiring (adj)	مُتعِب	achievement (n)	انجاز
tournament (n)	دورة رياضية	opponent (n)	خصم او منافس فى لعبة
AI (artificial intelligence)	الذكاء الاصطناعى	neighbor (n)	جار
vacation (n)	عطلة / اجازة	meeting (n)	اجتماع
workshop (n)	ورشة عمل	A helping hand	يد العون
catacombs (n)	سراديب وغرف دفن الموتى	focus (n) (v)	تركيز / يركز
obelisk (n)	مسلة	informal (adj)	غير رسمى
monument (n)	اثر تاريخى	imagine (d)	يتخيل
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	volunteer (ed) (n)	يتطوع / متطوع
effect (n)	تأثير	help out (ed)	يساعد
solution (n)	حل	check (ed)	يتأكد

Language قواعد لغوية

1- The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل تم وانتهى فى الماضى:

Ex. Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city.

Affirmative الاثبات

Ex. We climbed a mountain yesterday.

Ex. I played games last week.

Negative النفى

- بشكل عام يحول الماضى البسيط للنفى بإستخدام **(didn't)** مع تحويل الفعل للمصدر.

→ Subject + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I didn't visit my family. **Ex.** He didn't eat fish.

- يمكن استخدم **(never)** بدلاً من **(didn't)** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

→ Subject + never + الفعل في الماضي البسيط

Ex. Khalid never went to Aswan.

Question السؤال

السؤال بـ " هل...؟"

→ Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل...?

Ex. Did she ride her bike?

- Yes, she did. - No, she didn't.

وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

السؤال بكلمة استفهام **(Wh-)**

→ كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. **A:** What did you do yesterday? **B:** We went to the park.

2- Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	last...	... السابق
in the past	فى الماضي	...ago	منذ .... (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	فى عام (٢٠١٠)		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

Indefinite	غير محدد	Definite	محددة
always	دائما	once	مرة
usually	عادة	twice	مرتين
often	غالبا	three times	ثلاث مرات
sometimes	احيانا	every day / week	كل يوم/اسبوع
rarely	نادرا		
never	ابدا		

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات إنشائية و رسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1&2

My summer was full of fun and learning! I played in a big tournament with my friends, which was exciting. I also helped out at a community garden, planting flowers and learning about plants. To give back to my community, I taught some adults how to read and write in Arabic. It was rewarding to see them improve. I tried writing some cool stories using AI, which was like magic!

Lessons 3&4

I once visited a very old place with amazing things. It was a temple in Aswan. It was very old as it was about 3000 years old! There was a tall monument made of stone called an obelisk, and a big statue of a person. These were many monuments from a long time ago. The temple was very special, and lots of people came to see it. I took many photos to remember this amazing place.

Lessons 5&6

To: hussein82@yahoo.com
From: mohammed77@gmail.com.
Subject: My favorite sport

Dear Hussein,

It is nice to write to you. I want to tell you about my favorite sport. Table tennis, also known as ping pong, is my favorite sport. It's a fun and exciting game that can be played indoors or outdoors. All you need is a small table, two paddles, and a tiny ball. The goal is to hit the ball over the net so your opponent can't return it. I hope to hear from you soon.

Yours,
Mohammed

Al Azhar

My weekend was fun! On Saturday, I woke up late and had breakfast. After that, I went to the park with my friends. We played games and laughed a lot. In the evening, I watched a funny movie at home. On Sunday, I helped my mom with the housework like cleaning the house. Then, I read a book in my room and went to bed.

General Exercises Unit 1

My favorite sportsperson is Hana Goda. She is a young Egyptian table tennis player. She's known for her incredible skills. Although she's still very young, she's already won many important tournaments.

Hana started playing table tennis at a young age. She practiced hard and quickly became one of the best players in Egypt. Her dream is to represent Egypt at the Olympics and win a gold medal. Many people think she can do it! Hana is a great example of hard work.

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Playing sports helps you get _____ and healthy.

a. weak b. lazy c. strong d. funny

2. You can play with a friend and make a _____.

a. team b. statue c. test d. park

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana: What did you do yesterday?

Wafaa : 1 _____.

Rana : How did you write the story?

Wafaa : 2 _____.

Rana : 3 _____?

Wafaa : AI is the short form of artificial intelligence.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The team did well in the _____ and we won the cup.

a. test b. dream c. competition d. meeting

2. She worked hard and finally _____.

a. succeeded b. visited c. failed d. recycled

3. He is a brave man. He is a famous national _____.

a. temple b. statue c. award d. hero

4. A/An _____ is a person who competes against you.

a. actor b. opponent c. engineer d. star

5. Nothing could stop her _____ achieving her dream.

a. of b. for c. with d. from

C: Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Traveling around the world is like opening a big, colorful book. Every page is a new country with **exciting** stories and pictures. You can climb high mountains, swim in warm oceans, and eat yummy foods from different places. You'll meet people who are very different from you, but you can learn from **them** and make new friends. It's a big adventure that will teach you lots of things.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

---

2. What can you do when you travel?

---

3. Do you think traveling is important?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to_____.

a. mountains b. food c. people d. book

5. The underlined word "**exciting**" means_____.

a. terrible b. interesting c. lazy d. bad

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. a lot - had - **We** - fun - of. _____

2. last - did - do - **What** - you - summer? _____

3. is - **Why** - building - it - a special - ancient? _____

4. out - in - helped - **I** - workshop - my family's. _____

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"What did you do at the weekend?"

General Exercises on Unit 1

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Community gardens are places where people can _____ .
   a. grow their own food b. buy vegetables
   c. sleep d. bake
2. You can work with other people to grow fresh fruits and _____ .
   a. pasta b. stories c. vegetables d. sports
3. Growing plants is good for your health and the _____ .
   a. temples b. environment c. sky d. vacation
4. You can also learn about _____ in the community garden.
   a. recycling b. sports c. gardening d. eating

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist and a guide are going to visit the Pyramids.

Tourist : What are we going to visit today?

Guide : ❶ .....

Tourist : Wow! Where are the Pyramids?

Guide : ❷ .....

Tourist : ❸ .....?

Guide : The Great Pyramid of Giza is about 4,500 years old.

Tourist : ❹ .....?

Guide : They are made of huge stones.

Tourist : What else can we see here?

Guide : ❺ .....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

were - recycling - volunteered - was - picked

Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city. I 1 _____ at a community garden. I 2 _____ up litter and put it in bags. They took it to the 3 _____ center. It 4 _____ a great job.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer was really fun! It was a bit hot, and the days were long. It was the perfect time to play outside. Many kids went to the beach. They built sandcastles, swam in the cool water, and played with their friends. Some kids liked to go to the park. They climbed on the trees, rode their bikes, and flew kites.

If you didn't like the hot weather, you could stay **indoors** and have fun too. You could read books, play video games, or watch movies. Some kids went to summer camps where they learned new things and made new friends.

No matter what you did, it was important to stay safe in the sun. Remember to wear sunscreen, drink lots of water, and take breaks from the heat. Summer is a great time to relax and have fun.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What are some things you can do at the beach?

_____

2. How can you stay safe in the sun?

_____

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

_____

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. A good place to play outside is a _____.

a. library b. park c. bedroom d. school

5. The underlined word "**indoors**" means _____ a house.

a. outside b. inside c. far from d. behind

6. What is a good indoor activity for a hot day?

a. Swimming b. Reading c. Climbing d. Playing football

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An _____ was a place where ancient Egyptians often prayed.
   a. statue b. temple c. stadium d. park
2. When you _____ something, you hide it underground.
   a. bury b. volunteer c. build d. swim
3. The Pyramids are great and ancient _____ in Giza.
   a. sports b. vacations c. hobbies d. monuments
4. Our _____ Ahmed El Gendi broke the world's record and won the gold medal.
   a. assistant b. champion c. guide d. guest
5. _____ are underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead.
   a. Obelisks b. Temples c. Catacombs d. Statues
6. Tuesday 20th July was two months _____ .
   a. when b. ago c. because d. in
7. **A:** When did you visit the museum? **B:** _____ week.
   a. Next b. Ago c. For d. Last
8. I _____ to the museum four days ago.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. am going
9. My aunt and uncle _____ to London in 2018.
   a. traveled b. travels c. travel d. are traveling
10. Where _____ you last Friday?
    a. did b. were c. are d. was

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What did you _____ (did) last summer vacation?
2. I _____ (didn't) listened to music when I was young.
3. **A:** _____ (Did) you at school yesterday? **B:** Yes, I was.
4. Did you eat pizza _____ (tomorrow)?

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

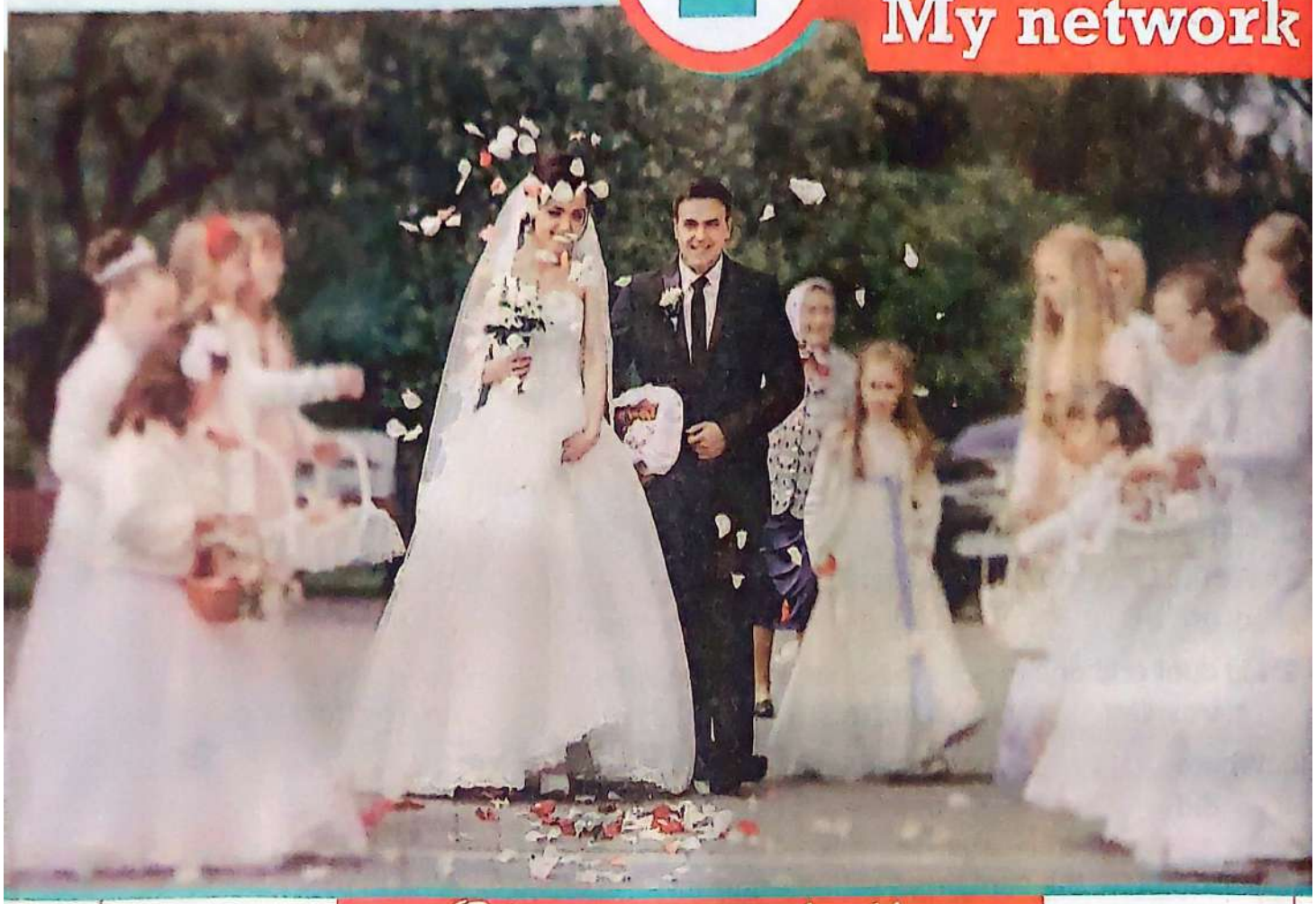
"Your favorite sportsperson"

Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 2

My network



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Social media posts about a friend's wedding; An emial to a friend about making arrangements; Friends online: a short story.

Writing:

Social media posts about a birthday.

Listening:

Profiles about family life around the world; A dialog about selling things online

Speaking:

Asking questions about family life in other countries.

Language:

Determiners and possessive 's /s'; Can and will for requests.

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 16 - 19

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bride (n)	عروس	wedding reception (n)	حفل الزفاف
groom (n)	عريس	wedding cake (n)	تورتة الزفاف
wedding guests (n)	ضيوف حفل الزفاف	wedding dress (n)	فستان الزفاف
marriage contract (n)	عقد الزواج	wedding (n)	حفل زفاف
network (n)	شبكة	wedding service (n)	مراسم الزفاف

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

fun (n / adj)	متعة/ممتع	galabeya (n)	جلابية
photographer (n)	مُصوِّر	detailed information (n)	معلومات تفصيلية
signing (n)	توقيع	cinema (n)	سينما
outfit (n)	زِيّ	message (n)	رسالة
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	opinion (n)	رأى
post (n)	منشور (على الإنترنت)	curly (adj)	مجعد
shop windows (n)	فترينات العرض	bracelet (n)	أسورة
members (n)	أفراد/أعضاء	gift (n)	هدية
gold (n / adj)	ذهب/ذهبي	plan (n)	خطة
necklace (n)	عُقْد	relatives (n)	أقارب
whole (adj)	كل/كامل	laugh (ed)	يضحك
restaurant (n)	مطعم	hug (ged)	يحتضن
shopping mall (n)	مركز تسوق	sign (ed)	يوقّع
maybe (adv)	ربما	look (ed)	يبدو
fur (n)	فرو	celebrate (d)	يحتفل

Unit 2 My network

Definitions

bride العروس	the woman who gets married
groom العريس	the man who gets married
wedding guests المدعوون/ضيوف حفل الزفاف	the people who come to the wedding
marriage contract عقد الزواج	the paper that the people who are getting married sign
wedding reception حفل الزفاف	the event where people eat and enjoy themselves
wedding cake تورتة الزفاف	something sweet that people at a wedding eat
wedding dress فستان الزفاف	a special outfit that a woman wears at a wedding

Expressions & Prepositions

take photos	يلتقط صور	next to	بجوار
take place	يحدث/يقع/يجري	meet up with	يلتقي بـ
make arrangements	يقوم بعمل ترتيبات	get married to	يتزوج أو تتزوج من (شخص)
have a meal	يتناول وجبة	on/at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
buy (sth) for (sb)	يشتري (شيء) لـ (شخص)	it was time for	كان هذا هو الوقت المناسب لـ
on her phone	على هاتفها	look for	يبحث عن
live a long away from	يعيش بعيدًا عن		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
reception حفل استقبال	party / celebration	-
amazing مدهش	fantastic / incredible	bad / awful سيء/فظيع
traditional تقليدي	old-fashioned	modern / new حديث/معاصر
delicious لذيذ	tasty / yummy	tasteless / unpleasant بلا طعم/سيء
favorite مفضل	favored / preferred	disliked مكروه
inside داخل/بالداخل	indoors	outside / outdoors خارج/بالخارج

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	usage	Example
-al	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	traditional
-en	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	golden
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	photographer
-y	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	funny
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	celebration

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
take	ياخذ	took	taken
come	ياتي	came	come
eat	ياكل	ate	eaten
see	يرى	saw	seen
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
stand	يقف	stood	stood
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 arrive (v. d): يصل

ويليها حرف الجر at / on / in عندما يأتي بعدها مكان أو زمان كما يلي:

- **arrive in:**

- يستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (in) عندما يتبعها اسم دولة او مدينة، أو عندما يليها عام أو شهر:

Ex. My father first arrived in London in 2000.

- **arrive on:**

- ويستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (on) - عندما يتبعها إسم شارع، أو إسم يوم من أيام الأسبوع:

Ex. My father will arrive on Monday.

- **arrive at:**

- ويستخدم بعدها حرف الجر (at) عندما يتبعها مكان محدد (مبنى)، او توقيت محدد (ساعة):

Ex. We arrived at Cairo airport at 9 pm.

Ex. He arrived at the station on time.

2 in = wearing مرتديا

- يمكن استخدام حرف الجر in كصفة بمعنى (مرتديا) عندما يأتي بعده إسم قطعة ملابس أو لون قطعة الملابس:

Ex. She looked very beautiful in her wedding dress.

Ex. The lady in black is my aunt.

3 on / at the weekend / weekends:

- يمكن استخدم حرف الجر (on) او (at) قبل كلمة the weekend / weekends الشكلين صحيحين:

Ex. I'm going to travel to Hurghada on / at the weekend.

Ex. I never work on / at weekends.

4 send / buy - somebody / something:

send / buy → somebody → something

Ex. I'm sending you a photo of me.

Ex. I bought him a toy.

send → something to → somebody

Ex. I'm sending a photo to you.

buy → something → for → something

Ex. Dad bought a toy for me.

5 maybe / may be:

• Maybe (adv)	• may be
- كلمة واحدة و غالبا تاتى اول الجملة و تعنى ربما و هى حال	- كلمتين الفعل الناقص (may) و فعل يكون be و تاتى وسط الجملة و لا تأتى فى الاول او الاخر
Ex. Maybe no one will come to the party.	Ex. He may be studying his lessons.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I arrived _____ Aswan in the early morning.
   a. to b. in c. on d. for
2. My father arrived _____ the hotel before the wedding started.
   a. at b. on c. for d. to
3. The boy _____ the yellow shirt is my friend.
   a. on b. at c. in d. of
4. I would like to stay home _____ the weekend.
   a. in b. on c. to d. with
5. He is sending _____.
   a. to me a gift b. me a gift c. a gift for me d. me to a gift
6. _____ this wasn't a good idea.
   a. May b. May be c. Maybe d. Be

Reading

SB Page (16)

A plan for a wedding

استمع إلى النص

- The bride(1), Shorouk, and the groom(2), Sherif, arrive at 5 pm.
- The photographer(3) arrives at 5.30 pm to take photos of(4) the bride in her wedding dress(5) and the groom.
- The wedding guests(6) arrive for the wedding service(7) between 6 and 6.30 pm.
- The signing(8) of the marriage contract(9) takes place(10) between 7.30 and 8.30 pm.
- The wedding reception(11) starts at 9 pm. The guests have a meal(12), eat wedding cake(13), and take photos with the bride and groom.

١. العروسة
٢. العريس
٣. المصور
٤. يلتقط صورا لـ
٥. فستان الزفاف
٦. ضيوف الزفاف
٧. حفل الزفاف
٨. توقيع
٩. عقد الزواج
١٠. يحدث/يقع
١١. حفل الزفاف
١٢. يتناول وجبة
١٣. تورتة الزفاف

SB Page (17)

Read the following, then answer the questions below:

1. Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married to(1) Ayman. It was a really fun day(2). I have a large family and more than half of the wedding guests were members(3) of my family!

I loved seeing my whole family come together(4) to celebrate(5) with Amira and Ayman. I saw aunts and uncles who live a long way from us and who I don't see very often. This is a photo of me next to(6) Amira and some of my cousins.

2. The wedding service was really beautiful. When Amira arrived, you could hear everyone say, "Wow!" She looked(7) so beautiful and her wedding dress was amazing(8). It was white, and she was wearing(9) a beautiful gold necklace(10) and bracelets(11) that were a gift(12) from Ayman. Ayman's traditional(13) galabeya was white. The bride and groom looked very happy!

3. After the signing(14) of the contract(15), it was time for(16) some food and some fun(17). That's my favorite(18) part of a wedding - the wedding reception! I sat at a table with my two brothers, my parents(19), and my grandma.

I wanted to talk to some other relatives(20) after the meal(21), so I got up and went to talk to my cousins. My cousin Eman showed me all her photos of the wedding on her phone, then Ayman and Amira cut the wedding cake. It was delicious(22)!

١. تزوجت من
٢. يوم ممتع
٣. أعضاء/أفراد
٤. يجتمعون
٥. يحتفل
٦. بجوار
٧. بدت/ظهرت
٨. مُدهش/رائع
٩. مرتدية
١٠. عقد ذهبي
١١. أساور
١٢. هدية
١٣. تقليدي
١٤. توقيع
١٥. العقد
١٦. حان وقت
١٧. متعة
١٨. مفضل
١٩. الوالدين
٢٠. أقارب
٢١. وجبة
٢٢. لذيذ

Reading Skill مهارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1 Which of the following is a good title for the text? ي من الآتى عنوان مناسب للنص

a A beautiful wedding in Luxor . b The importance of weddings.

c How to plan a wedding d A trip to Luxor.

2 Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence. لخص ثانى فقرة فى جملة واحدة

3 From the third paragraph, infer where the photos were. ستنتج من الفقرة الثالثة أين كانت الصور

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1 My cousin Amira got married to Ayman. تزوجت ابنة عمي اميرة من أيمن.

2 This is a photo of me next to Amira. هذه صورة لي بجوار أميرة.

3 The wedding service was really beautiful. كانت تجهيزات الزفاف جميلة جدا.

4 It was time for some food and fun. حان الوقت لبعض الطعام والمتعة.

Answers:

1. a. A beautiful wedding in Luxor

2. The bride wore a fantastic dress, and everyone admired her beauty.

3. They were on Eman's phone.

SB Page (18)

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

An email about making arrangements

From : Malak

To : Tamara

Subject : Some family photos

Hi Tamara,

How are you?

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party(1) last week. The party was at my grandparents' house and our whole family was there. We all had a lot of fun together(2)!

The party showed me that sending messages(3) to your friends and family is fine(4), but it's not as good as(5) spending time with them. You can laugh(6) with them, hug(7) them, and look in their eyes and really listen to them.

Do you have time to meet up with(8) me one afternoon next week? Maybe(9) on the weekend? We could go to the shopping mall. There's a shop there that has some beautiful clothes in its windows(10). I could ask my parents for some money for the cinema or to go to a restaurant. My dad's friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month and it looks great. What do you think?

Write soon and tell me about your family.

Love,

Malak

١. حفل عيد ميلاد
٢. معا
٣. إرسال الرسائل
٤. جيد
٥. ليس جيدا مثل
٦. يضحك
٧. يحتضن
٨. يلتقي بـ
٩. ربما
١٠. فتارين العرض

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sami and Hala are talking about Hend's wedding

Sami : Did you go to Hend's wedding last Friday?

Hala : ❶ .....

Sami : ❷ .....?

Hala : It took place at a big hotel in Nasr City

Sami : ❸ .....?

Hala : It was amazing!

Sami : What was your favorite part of the wedding?

Hala : ❹ .....

Sami : Did the guests dance and listen to music?

Hala : Yes, ❺ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. The woman who gets married is the _____.
   a. wedding b. cake c. bride d. groom
2. The man who gets married is the _____.
   a. groom b. contract c. marriage d. reception
3. They invited many _____ to the wedding party.
   a. services b. contracts c. guests d. grooms
4. The marriage _____ is the paper that the people who are getting married sign.
   a. cake b. contract c. reception d. service
5. We enjoyed the wedding _____ as we danced, ate cake and took photos.
   a. reception b. service c. dress d. guest
6. The wedding _____ is something sweet that people at a wedding eat.
   a. service b. contract c. cake d. groom
7. The bride looked beautiful in her white wedding _____.
   a. marriage b. dress c. gift d. service

8. A _____ is a big party where a man and a woman get married.
   a. dress b. contract c. hall d. wedding

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. The _____ took many pictures of the bride and the groom.
   a. photographer b. photograph c. photo d. photographing
10. The bride and the groom had to _____ the papers to get married.
   a. read b. write c. sign d. tear
11. The groom's _____ for the wedding was very good.
   a. cake b. outfit c. necklace d. bracelet
12. We add the suffix "_____" to the noun "tradition" to make the adjective.
   a. -y b. -ny c. -al d. -or
13. The bride wore a gold _____ around her neck on her wedding day.
   a. reception b. bracelet c. dress d. necklace
14. Our aunts and uncles are our _____.
   a. services b. contracts c. relatives d. receptions
15. The bride looked at wedding dresses in the shop _____ to choose one.
   a. windows b. doors c. roofs d. assistants
16. The wedding dress was amazing. "Amazing" is a synonym for _____.
   a. awful b. traditional c. fantastic d. bad
17. They made a traditional reception for their wedding. "Traditional" is an antony for _____.
   a. old-fashioned b. modern c. old d. ancient

Expressions & Prepositions

18. The wedding will _____ place next Sunday evening.
   a. get b. take c. give d. make
19. The groom will meet _____ with the wedding planner tomorrow.
   a. for b. down c. on d. up
20. My sister and I _____ the housework yesterday.
   a. had b. did c. made d. went

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. fantastic - groom - galabeya - The - his - looked - in - traditional

_____

2. the - your - reception - What - part - was - favorite - of?

_____



Language قواعد لغوية

Possessive determiners and 's / s' محددات وصيغ الملكية

• Possessive Determiners أو (محددات الملكية)، ويطلق عليها أيضا Possessive Adjectives أو (صفات الملكية) هي كلمات تستخدم لتدل على ملكية شخص او شيء لشيء. ولابد أن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك. وهذه الكلمات تختلف باختلاف ضمير الفاعل كما بالجدول:

Subject Pronoun ضمير الفاعل	Possessive Determiner محدد او صفة الملكية	Example	Possessive pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Example
I	my	This is my my car.	mine	The car is mine.
He	his	This is his house.	his	The house is his.
She	her	This is her room.	her	The room is hers.
It	its	This is its food.	-	-
We	our	This is our class.	our	The class is ours.
You	your	This isn't your pen.	your	The pen isn't yours.
They	their	These are their bags.		The bags are theirs.



- يجب عدم الخلط بين محددات أو صفات الملكية (التي لابد وأن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك) وبين ضمائر الملكية (التي لا يأتي بعدها إسم). وتختلف ضمائر الملكية باختلاف ضمير الفاعل كما يلي:

'S / S' (الملكية)

• للدلالة على الملكية يمكن أيضا استخدام ال ('s/s') بعد الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع:

Ex. Did you see Ahmed's new smartphone?

Ex. Here's the children's room.

• أما مع الأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بحرف (s) نستخدم فقط ال (') بعد حرف ال (s):

Ex. This is my parents' house.

Ex. Here's the kids' room.

Ex. That is the ladies' toilet.

• إما إذا كان اسم شخص منتهي بحرف (s) فيمكن استخدام ('s) أو (') بعده للدلالة على الملكية. الشكلين صحيحين:

Ex. I like Charles Dickens' / Dickens's novels so much.

- إذا اشترك شخصان في ملكية شيء واحد، يتم إضافة ('s) للكلمة الأخيرة فقط:

Ex. Let's attend Mary and Tom's wedding.

- إذا أردنا التعبير عن ملكية شخصين لشيئين منفصلين، يتم إضافة ('s) للكلمتين معاً:

Ex. Look at Ahmed's and Ali's cars!

- يمكن أن تضيف ('s) للوقت أو الفترات:

Ex. I liked yesterday's film.

- بعض الوظائف إذا أضيف إليها ('s) تصبح المكان الذي يعمل به الشخص:

butcher → butcher's محل الجزارة doctor → doctor's عيادة الطبيب

- يمكن أن نضيف ('s) إلى الأماكن:

Ex. Egypt's weather is fine.

- يمكن أن نضيف ('s) إلى بعض اسماء الاشياء:

Ex. The ship's name is the Titanic.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I'm sending you a photo of me at _____ grandma's birthday party last wee
   a. me b. my c. I d. mine
2. You can look in _____ eyes and really listen to them.
   a. they b. them c. theirs d. their
3. There's a shop there that has beautiful clothes in _____ windows.
   a. its b. his c. it d. him
4. Write soon and tell me about _____ family.
   a. you b. yours c. your d. mine
5. My _____ friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month.
   a. dad's b. dads c. dad d. dads'
6. This is my brother Yehia. _____ hair is short and curly.
   a. His b. He c. Him d. He's
7. My _____ house in Luxor is near the river.
   a. parent b. grandparents c. grandparents' d. grandparents's
8. This is our cat. Its name is Fluffy. _____ fur is brown.
   a. Fluffys' b. Fluffy's c. Fluffys d. Fluffy

9. Hana is my cousin. _____ mom is my Aunt Magda.
   a. She b. Hers c. She's d. Her
10. Is this a photo of _____ cousin's wedding, Samir?
   a. you b. you're c. your d. yours
11. The _____ dress is beautiful!
   a. bride b. bride's c. brides d. brides'

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. Where is _____ book?
   a. I b. mine c. me d. my
13. Here is _____ teacher of English.
   a. us b. our c. we d. ours
14. That is _____ desk over there. She sits at the back of the class.
   a. her b. hers c. she d. she's
15. The children like _____ teachers very much.
   a. they b. theirs c. their d. them
16. I bought this bicycle from Ali. Now it's _____.
   a. my b. mine c. me d. I
17. My father bought a new car last week. _____ color is red.
   a. It's b. It c. It is d. Its
18. My _____ new house is over there. They like it very much.
   a. cousins' b. cousins c. cousin d. cousin's
19. I share the bedroom with _____ brother hazem.
   a. I b. me c. my d. mine
20. They bought _____ tickets for the theatre.
   a. they b. them c. theirs d. their

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Hello! _____ (Mine) name is Ali.
2. Mr. Ali and Mr. Ahmed are my _____ (parents) friends.
3. Haneen is _____ (I) youngest daughter.
4. Is that _____ (yesterday) newspaper?
5. You can have some rest in the _____ (girls) bedroom. They are in the club.
6. These are the _____ (children) toys. Please, put them away.
7. Ahmed bought a new shirt. _____ (His) color is green.
8. Please, give this book to Ahmed. It's _____ (he).

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about making arrangements.

سؤال والجواب عن عمل الترتيبات:

Question	Answer
- What are you going to do this evening? ماذا تنوي ان تفعل هذا المساء؟	- I'm going to go to my cousin's wedding. سأذهب لحفل زفاف ابنة عمي
- Where will the wedding take place? أين سيقام حفل الزفاف؟	- It will take place in a big hotel. سيقام الحفل في فندق كبير.
- What are you going to wear for the wedding? ماذا سترتدي في حفل الزفاف	- I'm going to wear my new dress. سأرتدي فستاني الجديد.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sarah and Eman are talking about their arrangements for the weekend

Sarah : Hi Eman, are you free this weekend?
Eman : (1) .....
Sarah : I am thinking of going to the park. (2) .....
Eman : Yes, I'll be happy to go with you! (3) .....
Sarah : We can play games and ride bikes around the park.
Eman : Do we need to buy tickets?
Sarah : (4) ..... . It's for fre
Eman : Good! Can I bring my little sister?
Sarah : (5) ..... . What time should we meet u
Eman : How about 2 pm?
Sarah : That's great!

2 Read and complete:

my - reception - mine - outfits - guests

Last Sunday, I went to my cousin's wedding . The wedding (1) ..... were th members of (2) ..... family. The (3) ....., where we enjoyed delicio meals, was great. The bride and the groom were amazing in their (4) .....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The _____ around her neck was made of gold.
   a. cake b. necklace c. contract d. reception
2. She wore a beautiful _____ on her hand.
   a. hat b. helmet c. earring d. bracelet
3. My _____ came from all over the country to my sister's wedding.
   a. relatives b. receptions c. services d. photographers
4. I posted a picture on social _____ to share with my friends.
   a. television b. newspaper c. media d. wedding
5. During our walk in the street, we saw very beautiful shirts in the shop _____.
   a. windows b. doors c. shelves d. roofs
6. Whose book is this? - It's _____ book.
   a. I b. my c. mine d. ours
7. The students are working on _____ project.
   a. they b. ours c. them d. their
8. The dog is playing with _____ ball.
   a. mine b. hers c. its d. him
9. The _____ toys are in their room.
   a. children b. children's c. childrens' d. childrens
10. My _____ car is blue. She wants to change its color.
    a. sisters b. sister c. sisters' d. sister's

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

A wedding you attended (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- When was it?

- Who were the guests? **- Where did it take place?**

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية

- Last Sunday, I went to .....

- It took place in .....

- The wedding guests were the .....

Lessons 3&4

SB pages 20 - 23

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bank account (n)	حساب بنكي	website (n)	موقع الكتروني على الانترنت
public (adj)	عام/عمومي	true (adj)	حقيقي/صحيح
online (adv. / adj)	من خلال أو متصلا بالانترنت	green (adj)	صديق للبيئة
apartment (n)	شقة	solar panels (n)	الواح الطاقة الشمسية
share (v. d)	يشارك	personal information (n)	معلومات شخصية
explore (d)	يستكشف	environmentally friendly (adj)	غير ضار بالبيئة

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

Italy (n)	ايطاليا	country (n)	بلد/ دولة
profile (n)	سيرة/لمحة	motorbike (n)	دراجة نارية
honest (adj)	امين	safe (adj)	آمن
walk (n)	جولة مشي	village (n)	قَرية
the countryside (n)	الريف	near (adv. / prep)	قريب من
recycled materials (n)	مواد معاد تدويرها	grandparents (n)	الأجداد
details (n)	تفاصيل	activity (n)	نشاط
address (n)	عنوان	furniture (n)	أثاث
date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	rules (n)	قواعد
intercom (n)	جهاز الاتصال الداخلي	well-known (adj)	معروف/مشهور
alone (adj)	وحيد/بمفرده	coast (n)	ساحل
downstairs (adv)	في الطابق الأسفل	island (n)	جزيرة
buzz (v. ed)	يتصل مستخدمًا	nearby (adj)	قريب
present (v. ed)	يقدم	Indonesia (n)	إندونيسيا
remember (v. ed)	يتذكر	Canada (n)	كندا
fetch (ed)	يُحضر	the UK (n)	المملكة المتحدة

Expressions & Prepositions

flying kites	اللعب بالطائرات الورقية	when I was your age	عندما كنت فى عمرك
go skiing	يذهب للتزلج	get money for	يحصل على أموال ثمنا لـ
do the housework	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية	as long as	طالما أن
share information	يشارك معلومات	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
It's better to	من الأفضل أن	make sure	يتأكد
Why don't you?	لما لا تفعل	in good condition	بحالة جيدة
sell things online	يبيع أشياء من خلال الانترنت	meet someone in person	يقابل شخص بنفسه
that way	بهذه الطريقة	in fact	فى الحقيقة
got it	فهمتك	on the roof	على السطح
no problem	لا توجد مشكلة		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
true حقيقي	correct / right	wrong / fake خطأ/مزيف
public عام	common / open	private / secret سري
near قريب	far / remote	close / nearby قريب
safe آمِن	secure / guarded	insecure /unsafe غير آمن

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	usage	Example
un-	تكوّن عكس الصفة	unsafe untrue
in-	تكوّن عكس الصفة	insecure
-er	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	buzzer
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	activity
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	information

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الملتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
send	يرسل	sent	sent
meet	يقابل	met	met
feed	يطعم	fed	fed
hang out	يتسكع	hung out	hung out

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Whose .....? ملك من

- إذا كان الفعل الرئيسي بالسؤال الذي يبدأ بأداة الاستفهام (whose) هو (be)، فيمكن أن يأتي السؤال بأحد الشكلين التاليين:

- Whose + noun + be .....?

Ex. Whose book is this?

- Whose + be + noun?

Ex. Whose is this book?

2 near / nearby

- near (prep)

- قريب (حرف جر) يأتى بعدها الاسم مسبوق بـ (the) أو صفة من صفات الملكية (my).

Ex. There is a lovely shop near the park.

- nearby (adj / adv)

Ex. We could go to a nearby restaurant.

- على مسافة قريبة من. هنا (حال) بعد الفعل

Ex. A new restaurant opened nearby.

3 few / a few + إسم جمع

- تأتي الكلمتان few / a few بمعنى (قليل)، ويأتي بعدهما دائما إسم جمع - ولكن هناك فرق في الاستخدام بين الكلمتين:

- few قليل جدا ولا يكفى:

Ex. She has few friends. So she feels lonely.

- a few قليل ولكنه يكفى :

Ex. She has a few friends. She enjoys her time with them.

4 information معلومات

- رغم ان كلمة information (وكذلك furniture) تبدو من معناها أنها جمع، إلا أنها دائما تعامل معاملة المفرد ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد:

Ex. Make sure all the information you give is true. ~~(NOT: are true).~~

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... pencil is this? - It's mine.
   a. Who b. Whose c. Which d. Where
2. I'd like to go to a ..... cinema.
   a. near b. nearly c. nearby d. nearside
3. We have got ..... tomatoes. Please, go to market and buy some.
   a. a few b. few c. much d. many
4. The information you gave me ..... useful.
   a. are b. were c. was d. has

Reading

SB Page (20)

SB Page (20)

استمع إلى النص

Isabella : Hello, my name's Isabella. I'm from Naples, a big city in the south of(1) Italy. I live with my mom, dad, and brother in an apartment. My grandparents live just across(2) the road! We have a car, but my brother usually gets around(3) on his motorbike. At the weekends, we like to get out of(4) the city to explore(5) the coast(6) and islands(7) near Naples.

Liam : Hi, I'm Liam. I'm from Toronto in Canada. I live with my mom, brother, and two sisters. Oh, and our dog, Bobby! But our grandparents live on the other side of Canada, so we only see them in the school holidays. Our house is big and has a garden. We have a car, too. It's fun hanging out with(8) my family. In the summer, we ride(9) our bikes. In the winter, we go skiing!

Komang : Hi, my name's Komang. My family and I live on an Island in Indonesia. It's a big family! There's my mom, dad, brother and grandma, my aunt and uncle, and my three cousins. We all live together in a traditional house.We don't have a car, but we have two motorbikes. Our favorite thing to do together is to go to the beach to fly kites!

Alice : Hello, My name is Alice and I live with my family in a village(10) in the UK(11). In my family, there's me and my sister, and our mom. Our grandparents live nearby(12), and we often all go for walks in the countryside(13) together. Our house is very new and modern(14) - I call it our «green house» because it's made of recycled(15) materials(16) and has solar panels(17) on the roof.

١. جنوب
٢. على الجانب الآخر من
٣. يتجول
٤. يخرج من
٥. يستكشف
٦. الساحل
٧. جُزُر
٨. يقضي وقتا مع
٩. يركب
١٠. قرية
١١. المملكة المتحدة
١٢. قريبا
١٣. الريف
١٤. حديث
١٥. معاد تصنيعه
١٦. مواد خام
١٧. ألواح الطاقة الشمسية

SB Page (26)

Selling things online

Seif : Grandpa, why don't you sell(1) some of this old furniture(2) online? That way you can get some money for it.

Grandpa : I don't know ... Is it safe(3)?

Seif : It's safe as long as(4) you follow(5) a few rules(6).

Grandpa : Can you tell me what they are?

Seif : I can, yes. First, always use a well-known(7) website(8) to buy or sell something. Here's a good one. OK, what do you want to sell?

Grandpa : How about this table?

Seif : Great. Can you give me your phone so I can take a photo of it? Thanks. OK, the next thing to remember(9) is: always be honest. Make sure(10) all the information(11) you give about something you're selling is true(12).

Grandpa : Well, this is a large table from the 1970s. It's in good condition(13).

Seif : OK. Now, another very important rule is: don't share(14) personal information(15), like your name, date of birth(16), address (17), or bank account details(18).

Grandpa : Got it. What happens next?

Seif : Someone will send you a message if they want to buy the table.

Grandpa : And then will I meet the person to give it to them?

Seif : It's better to send it to them. In fact, that's another important rule. If you have to meet someone, meet them in a public place(19) and don't go alone(20).

Grandpa : Thanks, Seif. We never did this when I was your age(21)!

١. يبيع
٢. أثاث
٣. آمِن
٤. طالما
٥. يتبع
٦. قواعد
٧. مشهور
٨. موقع
٩. يتذكر
١٠. يتأكد
١١. معلومات
١٢. حقيقي
١٣. بحالة جيدة
١٤. يشارك
١٥. معلومات شخصية
١٦. تاريخ الميلاد
١٧. العنوان
١٨. تفاصيل
١٩. مكان عام
٢٠. يذهب بمفرده
٢١. في نفس عمرك

Reading Skill مهارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Which of the following is a good title for the text?
   a. Online shopping safety b. Selling things online
   c. How to use a website d. Seif visits his grandpa.
2. Why do people buy and sell things online?
3. From the conversation, we can infer that we should meet people who we don't know in a/an _____ place.
   a. private b. public b. secret b. unusual

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)

1. Always use a well-known website to buy or sell something. استخدم دائما موقع مشهور
2. Make sure all the information you give is true. تأكد من صحة كل المعلومات التي تذكرها.
3. Don't share personal information, like your date of birth or bank account details.
   لا تشارك اي بيانات شخصية مثل تاريخ ميلادك او تفاصيل حسابك البنكي.
4. If you have to meet someone, meet them in a public place and don't go alone.
   لو انك مضطر لمقابلة شخص ما، قابله في مكان عام ولا تذهب بمفردك.

Answers: 1. b. Selling things online 2. Because it's easier. 3. b. public.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ayman are talking about selling things online

Omar : I'm thinking of selling old clothes online. Do you think it's safe?
Ayman : ① ----------
Omar : OK. What should I do?
Ayman : ② ----------
Omar : What are these rules?
Ayman : ③ ----------
Omer : ④ ----------?
Ayman : Don't give your personal information or address.
Omar : ⑤ ----------?
Ayman : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. Always use a well-known _____ to buy or sell something online.
   a. country b. computer c. website d. market
2. Make sure the information you give about something you're selling is _____.
   a. true b. fake c. wrong d. bad
3. Never _____ personal information like your name or address.
   a. take b. get c. sell d. share

4. If you have to meet someone in person, meet them in a _____ place.
   a. general b. public c. private d. secret
5. If you have to meet someone in person, don't go _____.
   a. lonely b. funny c. alone d. true

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. You need to be careful when you buy or sell something _____.
   a. online b. offline c. outline d. headline
7. To be safe when you ride a _____, you must wear a helmet.
   a. car b. bus c. motorbike d. train
8. To be healthy, our houses need to be _____ friendly.
   a. earthly b. environmentally c. family d. personally
9. Going _____ on weekends is one of my favourite activities.
   a. planning b. paying c. skiing d. sleeping
10. We add the suffix "_____" to the word "inform" to get the noun.
    a. -ness b. -less c. -ation d. -y
11. You can stay _____ online as long as you follow the rules.
    a. healthy b. polite c. rude d. safe
12. We add the _____ "un" at the beginning of the word "safe" to get its opposite.
    a. synonym b. prefix c. antonym d. suffix
13. Please, send this order to my sister's _____ at 15, Orabi Street, Giza.
    a. birth b. account c. address d. date
14. He used the _____ to call for his secretary in the other office.
    a. internet b. intercom c. website d. newspaper
15. My sister's _____ of birth is February 12, 2010.
    a. place b. message c. account d. date
16. My father has more than one bank _____ where he saves his money.
    a. account b. website c. date d. address

Expressions & Prepositions

17. We plan to _____ skiing in the mountains this winter.
    a. do b. make c. go d. get
18. You can sell your old bike and get money _____ it.
    a. on b. for c. to d. with
19. At school, you should _____ the rules.
    a. tell b. follow c. say d. study
20. I finally met my online friend _____ person last weekend.
    a. on b. with c. for d. in



Language قواعد لغوية

Can and will for requests.

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال الناقصة (can) / (will) عند التعبير عن الطلب:

(Can / Will + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر ?)

Ex. Can you take a message, please?
Ex. Will you carry this for me, please?
Ex. Will you lend me some money?
Ex. Can I borrow your pen?

- عادة لا نستخدم (can) في الرد سواء بالقبول أو الرفض ويمكن أن نستخدم:

Ex. Yes, of course. Ex. Sure, no problem.

- عند رفض الطلب عادة ما نعطي سبب حتى يبدو الأمر أكثر تهذيبًا:

Ex. Sorry, I can't at the moment. I'm studying.
Ex. No, sorry, I'm busy. I'll do it later.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. _____ you help me with my laptop, please?
   a. Can b. Don't c. Never d. Might
2. _____ you lend me your pencil?
   a. May b. Are c. Will d. Have
3. _____ you answer the phone, please?
   a. Has b. Can c. Must d. Did
4. _____ you feed the dog this evening, please?
   a. Have b. Should c. Might d. Can
5. _____ you fetch my coat, please? It's in the hall.
   a. Will b. Is c. Have d. Did
6. _____ you carry these bags for me, please?
   a. Should c. Must c. Did d. Can
7. I'm downstairs _____ you open the door, please?
   a. Must c. Does c. Can d. Might
8. _____ you carry these bags for me, please?
   a. Are c. Will c. Has d. Does

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. ..... you help me with my homework?

a. Have b. Does c. Can d. May

10. ..... you turn on the fan, please?

a. Will b. Might c. Shall d. Does

11. It's very hot in here. ..... you open the window, please?

a. Should b. Do c. Must d. Can

12. ..... you lend me some money, please?

a. Are b. Will c. Should d. Do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Must) you lend me your ruler, please?
2. Excuse me, sir. ..... (Should) you say the answer again, please?
3. ..... (Do) you tell me how to go to the post office, please?
4. Please, Ali. ..... (Must) you wait for me?
5. Please, Mom. ..... (Did) you help me with this question?

Speaking

Making and responding to requests (Will / Can)

• تقديم الطلب والرد عليه:

- Can you + inf. / Will you.....? هل يمكن ان ..؟

Agreeing		Disagreeing	
- Yes, of course	نعم بالطبع	- Sorry, I can't.	آسف لا يمكنني
- Sure! No problem	بالتأكيد لا مشكلة	- No. Sorry I'm busy	لا . آسف أنا مشغول.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Complete the following dialogue between:

Baher wants to sell his old car.

Baher : Hi Maged. I want to sell my old car.

Maged : Hi Baher. ❶ .....?

Baher : That's a good idea! ❷ .....?

Maged : Yes, I often buy and sell things online.

Baher : Is it easy to sell things online?

Maged : ❸ ..... . Just post pictures and wait for buyers.

Baher : Will you help me post the pictures?

Maged : ❹ ..... . Where are they?

Baher : They are on my phone.

Maged : OK. ❺ .....

Baher : Thank you very much.

2 Read and complete:

personal - apartment - well-known - intercom - address

If you want to sell your old ❶ _____, you can post its pictures on a ❷ _____ website. Don't share any ❸ _____ information about you, especially your ❹ _____.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I know this boy, but I can't _____ his name.

a. sign b. celebrate c. remember d. enjoy

2. If you are hungry, you can _____ this pizza with your sister.

a. share b. follow c. sell d. find

3. We must follow the _____ in the school library.

a. addresses b. dates c. photos d. rules

4. Most people spend their weekends in the new _____ park.

a. special b. public c. private d. safe

5. You can find the information you need on our website .....

a. online b. hotline c. deadline d. offline

6. She felt afraid walking home ..... at night.

a. old b. high c. alone d. private

7. To keep your money ....., keep it in your bank account.

a. far b. safe c. near d. public

8. ..... you please pass me the salt?

a. Must b. Should c. Might d. Will

9. ..... you send me the email tonight?

a. Can b. Have c. May d. Do

10. ..... you open the window for some fresh air?

a. Have b. Does c. Will d. Must

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Buying things online".

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- Do you like buying and selling things online?

- Did you buy or sell something online?

- What did you do to sell it?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية

I like buying and selling things online because .....

Last month, I wanted to sell my bicycle. I .....

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

website (n)	موقع الكتروني	informal (adj)	غير رسمي
chatting (n)	الدردشة	symbol (n)	رمز
photography (n)	التصوير	emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري
challenge (n)	تحدّي/صعوبة	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى
online friendship (n)	صداقة عبر الانترنت	congratulate (d)	يهنئ
communication (n)	التواصل	congratulate (d)	يهنئ
formal (adj)	رسمي	misunderstanding (n)	سوء فهم

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

forum (n)	منتدى	bro (n)	اخ/صديق
topic (n)	موضوع	smiley face	وجه ضاحك
nature (n)	الطبيعة	congratulations (n)	تهانينا
specific theme	موضوع محدد	real (adj)	حقيقي/واقعي
close friend (n)	صديق مُقَرّب	personal (adj)	شخصى
schoolwork (n)	الواجب المدرسي	several (adj)	متعدد
comment (n)	تعليق	book club (n)	نادي الكتاب
offline (adv / adj)	غير متصل بالانترنت	face-to-face (adj)	وجها لوجه
understanding (n)	فهم/تفاهم	special (adj)	خاص/ذو أهمية أو مكانة خاصة
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	discuss (ed)	يصف
importance (n)	أهمية	handle (d)	يتناول/يتعامل مع
though (conj)	بالرغم من	reply (n / ied)	رد/يردّ
hobby (n)	هواية	decide to (ed)	يقرر أن
experiences (n)	خبرات	pass (ed)	يمر

Unit 2 My network

Expressions & Prepositions

make a friend online	يتخذ صديقا من خلال الانترنت	deal with	يتعامل مع
do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع	reply to	يرد على
go online	يتصل بالانترنت	hear from	يتلقى رسالة من
answer a message	يرد على رسالة	interested in	مهتم بـ
feel worried / sad	يشعر بالقلق/بالحزن	get a comment from	يأتيه تعليق من
make plans	يقوم بعمل خطط	of her age	في نفس عمرها
social media account	حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	have a lot in common	لديهما أشياء كثيرة مشتركة
a 15-year-old girl	فتاة عمرها ١٥ عام	(be) there for	يكون بجانب أو مساندا لـ
a top student	طالب متفوق	proud of	فخور بـ
handle a situation	يتعامل مع موقف	(be) over	ينتهي
		focus on	يركز على

Definitions

website	موقع الكتروني	a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities
chatting	الدردشة	talking to someone in a friendly way, often online
photography	التصوير	the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera
challenge	تحدِّي / صعوبة	something that is difficult and tests your ability
communication	التواصل	the act of talking or writing to share information with others

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
challenge تحدي	difficulty	ease سهولة
meaningful ذو معنى	expressive	meaningless ليس له معنى
real حقيقي	factual	unreal غير حقيقي
online على الانترنت	on the internet	offline / face-to-face غير متصل /وجها لوجه
young صغير في السن	green / junior	old / adult كبير في السن
formal رسمى	official	informal غير رسمى

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix البوادئ واللواحق	usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى إلى إسم	understanding
in-	تكوّن عكس الصفة	informal
-al	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	personal
-mis	تكوّن عكس الفعل	misunderstand
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	communication
-ity	تحول الصفة إلى إسم	activity
-ly	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	friendly

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make	يكوّن/يصنع	made	made
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
take	يأخذ/يلتقط	took	taken
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
become	يصبح	became	become
deal	يتعامل	dealt	dealt
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 a 30-day challenge / a 15-year-old girl

- لاحظ الصيغة السابقة - صفة وتتكون من(رقم + شرطة + اسم مفرد):

Ex. She is a 15-year-old girl = She is 15 years old.

Ex. We have five-minute breaks between lessons.

2 stop + v -ing

- يأتي الفعل stop متبوعا بصيغة v –ing بمعنى يتوقف عن فعل شيء:

Ex. My father stopped smoking two years ago.

Ex. Will you please stop making noise?

- ويأتي الفعل stop متبوعا بـ to + inf. بمعنى يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء:

Ex. On his way home, he stopped to buy bread.

3 special / private

- تأتي كلمة special بمعنى (له مكانة خاصة/مميز)، بينما تأتي كلمة private بمعنى (خاص من حيث الملكية):

Ex. My birthday is a special day for me. | Ex. Don't read my private messages

4 let + مفعول به + فعل بالمصدر:

- يأتي الفعل let متبوعا بمفعول به ثم فعل بالمصدر:

Ex. Let me help you with these bags. | Ex. The teacher let her use a calculator.

5 some time / sometimes

• some time بعض الوقت	• sometimes احيانًا
Ex. I need some time to relax.	Ex. I sometimes feel nervous.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need to go on a _____.
   a. five day holiday b. five day-holiday
   c. five-day-holiday d. five-day holiday
2. We bought _____ for the concert.
   a. a 20-pound tickets b. 20-pound tickets
   c. 20 pound-tickets d. 20-pound ticket
3. I stopped _____ the daily newspapers. I read the news online.
   a. buying b. buy c. bought d. to buy
4. We have a _____ guest this evening. The manager of our company!
   a. private b. public c. special d. social
5. I like traveling in my _____ car. I don't like public transport.
   a. special b. private c. public d. general
6. Will you please let me _____ your phone for a minute?
   a. borrow b. borrowing c. borrowed d. borrows
7. We _____ meet at the club.
   a. some time b. some times c. sometimes d. something

Reading

SB Page (24)

Read the following, then answer the questions below:

FRIENDS ONLINE

استمع إلى النص

Salma, a 15-year-old girl from Egypt, loved photography(1). She often shared her photos on a website(2) for young photographers(3). One day, she got a comment(4) from Ashly, a girl of her age from Australia, who liked her photos. They started chatting and found out they had a lot in common(5). They both loved taking pictures of nature(6). Soon, they were talking every day, and decided to do a 30-day photography challenge(7) together. Each day, they had to take a photo on a specific theme(8) and share it. They enjoyed the challenge and became closer friends(9).

However, one day, Ashly suddenly stopped answering Salma's messages. Salma felt worried. She sent several messages, but there was no reply. Salma felt sad that their friendship might be over(10).

Salma couldn't focus on(11) her schoolwork or her photography. After talking with her mother, Salma decided to send a message, letting Ashly know that she was there for her(12). She wrote, "Hi Ashly, I hope you're okay. If you need someone to talk to, I'm here for you." A few more days passed, and finally, Ashly replied. She explained that she had been dealing with(13) some difficult family news and needed some time offline(14). Salma was happy to hear from Ashly again. They talked about what had happened and made plans to continue their challenge.

Salma and Ashly now had a better understanding(15) of the importance of communication(16) and being there for each other. They knew that their friendship(17), though online, was real and meaningful(18).

١. التصوير
٢. موقع الكتروني
٣. مصورون
٤. تعليق
٥. لديهم الكثير من القواسم المشتركة
٦. الطبيعة
٧. تحدّي
٨. موضوع محدد
٩. أصدقاء مقربون
١٠. ينتهي
١١. يركز في
١٢. كانت تدعمها
١٣. تتعامل مع
١٤. غير متصل بالانترنت
١٥. فهم
١٦. تواصل
١٧. صداقة
١٨. ذات معنى

Reading Skill مهارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Which of the following is a good title for the text?
   a. A photography challenge b. Making friends online
   c. Comon family problems d. The importance of friendship
2. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.
3. From the conversation, we can infer that online friendship is _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _.

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. Salma decided to do a 30-day photography challenge. قررت سلمى القيام بتحدي في التصوير مدته ثلاثون يوما.
2. Salma felt worried and sent several messages, but there was no reply.
   شعرت سلمى بالقلق وارسلت عدة رسائل، ولكن لا يوجد رد.
3. I hope you're Ok. If you need someone to talk to, I'm here for you.
   آمل أن تكون بخير. لو أنك تحتاج لشخص ما للتحدث معه، أنا هنا من أجلك.

Answers:
1. b. Making friends online 2. Salma was keen to know what was wrong with Ashly
3. Online friendship can be meaningful.

SB Page (26)

Happy birthday(1) to my fantastic(2) Mido. He's 15 today! He's a great brother because he's always there for me and our little sister when we need help. Thanks bro!

And of course, we all know he's a top student(3) and also an amazing football player - 16 goals last season(4) for our school team. Well done Mido, I'm proud of you(5). Have a great birthday(6)!

١. عيد ميلاد سعيد
٢. رائع
٣. طالب متفوق
٤. موسم
٥. أنا فخور بك
٦. أتمنى لك عيد ميلاد سعيد

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal and Basma are talking about online friendship

Manal : Hi Basma. Have you ever made a friend online?
Basma : Yes, ❶ _____ last year.
Manal : That's great! ❷ _____?
Basma : We met on a website and started talking.
Manal : ❸ _____?
Basma : Yes, we chat almost every day.
Manal : Do you think online friendships are different from real ones?
Basma : ❹ _____, but you can still make a friendship online.
Manal : Would you like to meet your online friend in person someday?
Basma : Yes, we talked about visiting each other in the future.
Manal : That sounds exciting. Just be careful and stay safe.
Basma : For sure! ❺ _____.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. A/An _____ is a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities.
   a. wedding b. intercom c. website d. reception
2. _____ means talking to someone in a friendly way, often online.
   a. Chatting b. Describing
   c. Understanding d. Commenting
3. _____ is the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera.
   a. Challenge b. Friendship c. Photography d. Sharing
4. It was a big _____ for me to come first in the race.
   a. information b. challenge c. loss d. problem
5. _____ is the act of talking or writing to share information with others.
   a. Emoji b. Service c. Contract d. Communication

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. We use the prefix "_____." to get the opposite of the word "formal".
   a. im- b. dis- c. in- d. un-
7. She sent me a smiley face _____ in her message.
   a. prefix b. emoji c. synonym d. suffix
8. I asked a question on the online _____, and many people from different countries answered my question.
   a. autumn b. season c. gift d. forum
9. Online _____ can start when two people chatting have things in common.
   a. emoji b. website c. friendship d. challenge
10. We use the suffix "_____" to get the adjective from the noun "meaning".
    a. -ful b. -ness c. -al d. -ion
11. The word "online" is an antonym for _____.
    a. headline b. offline c. deadline d. hotline
12. The teacher gave us _____ instructions for the test, which helped us a lot.
    a. public b. unclear c. crazy d. specific
13. Many people left nice _____ on my post on Facebook.
    a. receptions b. weddings c. comments d. services
14. The teacher has a good _____ of your problem and will help you.
    a. understanding b. celebrating
    c. chatting d. misunderstanding
15. Bad communication among people often causes _____.
    a. friendship b. misunderstanding c. celebration d. meaning
16. My friendship with my American pen friend John is _____, though online.
    a. offline b. bored c. careful d. meaningful
17. I have a/an _____ meeting with my friends every weekend. We meet at the club.
    a. face-to-face b. online
    c. faraway d. environmentally-friendly

Expressions & Prepositions

18. She _____ the situation very well without asking for help.
    a. dealt b. chatted c. handled d. signed
19. I _____ a friend online who lives in Japan.
    a. dealt b. did c. told d. made
20. My best friend Ali and I have a lot in _____, like music and movies.
    a. private b. common c. special d. public
21. They _____ online to do a research.
    a. made b. went c. did d. had
22. I usually _____ worried about my grandfather's health.
    a. feel b. fall c. fill d. fail

3 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

1. decided - a - holiday - take - to - five - day - I

.....

2. common - and - I - a lot - friend - have - my - in

.....

Speaking

Useful language used on social media

تعبيرات لغوية هامة تستخدم على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي:

Congratulations!	تهانينا/أجمل التهاني
Well done!	أحسنت
I'm so proud of you.	أنا فخور جدا بك
I'm so happy for you.	أنا مسرور جدا من أجلك
Have a great day!	أتمنى لك يوما رائعا

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rami passed his exam

Rami : Dad! I'm very happy!
Father : ① .....?
Rami : I passed my exam!
Father : ② .....! That's amazing
Rami : Thank you! I worked really hard.
Father : ③ .....?
Rami : The exam was really difficult.
Father : Well done! I'm so proud of you.
Rami : I'm so happy it's finally over.
Father : ④ .....
Rami : Thanks so much for your help.
Father : You're welcome. ⑤ .....

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the list:

nature - close - schoolwork - Photography - challenge

I love spending time in nature with my ① ..... friend. We go to the forest to enjoy ② ..... . ③ ..... in the forest is very beautiful. We love to take pictures of trees and flowers. It's a ④ ..... to find the best things to take pictures of.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I got very good _____ on my new picture on Facebook.
   a. comments b. dislikes c. blogs d. networks
2. I _____ online to check my emails every day.
   a. do b. make c. go d. take
3. My father is always _____ for me when I need help.
   a. that b. there c. than d. this
4. The lesson will be _____ by 4 pm. Then we can go to the club.
   a. about b. under c. above d. over
5. You need to _____ on your lessons this week.
   a. play b. chat c. focus d. sign
6. Let's _____ plans to go to the park this weekend.
   a. make b. work c. do d. comment

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Making friends".

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- How important is making friends?

- What is a true friend?

- Who is your best friend?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية

Friends are _____.

They are always there, _____.

They make life more _____.

A true friend is the one who _____

Review on Unit 2

Key Vocabulary

bride (n)	عروس	wedding reception (n)	حفل الزفاف
groom (n)	عريس	wedding cake (n)	تورتة الزفاف
wedding guests (n)	ضيوف حفل الزفاف	wedding dress (n)	فستان الزفاف
marriage contract (n)	عقد الزواج	bank account (n.)	حساب بنكي
network (n)	شبكة	public (adj.)	عام / عمومي
website (n.)	موقع الكتروني على الانترنت	online (adv. / adj.)	من خلال أو متصلا بالانترنت
true (adj.)	حقيقي/صحيح	apartment (n.)	شقة
green (adj)	صديق للبيئة	share (d)	يشارك
solar panels (n)	الواح الطاقة الشمسية	explore (d)	يستكشف
personal information (n.)	معلومات شخصية	formal (adj.)	رسمي
environmentally friendly (adj.)	غير ضار بالبيئة	informal (adj.)	غير رسمي
chatting (n.)	الدردشة	symbol (n.)	رمز
photography (n.)	التصوير	emoji (n.)	رمز تعبيري
challenge (n.)	تحدٍّي/صعوبة	meaningful (adj.)	ذو معنى
online friendship (n.)	صداقة عبر الانترنت	congratulate (d)	يهنئ
communication (n.)	التواصل		

Language قواعد لغوية

Possessive determiners and 's / s' محددات وصيغ الملكية

• Possessive Determiners أو (محددات الملكية)، ويطلق عليها أيضا Possessive Adjectives أو (صفات الملكية) هي كلمات تستخدم لتدل على ملكية شخص او شيء لشيء. ولابد أن يأتي بعدها الإسم المملوك. وهذه الكلمات تختلف باختلاف ضمير الفاعل كما يلي:

Subject Pronoun ضمير الفاعل	Possessive Determiner محدد او صفة الملكية (متبوعة باسم)	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية (بدون اسم بعدها)
I	my	mine
He	his	his
She	her	hers
It	its	-
We	our	ours
You	your	yours
They	their	theirs

's / s' للمكية

's	للدلالة على الملكية يمكن أيضا استخدام ال ('s/s') بعد الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع:
s'	أما مع الأسماء الجمع التي تنتهي بحرف (s) نستخدم فقط ال (') بعد حرف ال (s):
' / 's	إما إذا كان اسم شخص منتهي بحرف (s) فيمكن استخدام ('s) أو (') بعده للدلالة على الملكية. الشكلين صحيحين

Ex. Did you see Ahmed's new smartphone?

Ex. Here's the children's room.

Ex. This is Dickens' / Dickens's novel.

Can and will for requests.

- يمكن استخدام الأفعال الناقصة (can) / (will) عند التعبير عن الطلب:

Ex. Can you take a message, please?

Ex. Will you carry this for me, please?

Ex. Will you lend me some money?

Ex. Can I borrow your pen?

Paragraphs& Emails

Lessons 1&2

Last Sunday, I went to my friend's sister's wedding. It took place in a big hall. Both the bride's and the groom's relatives came together to celebrate the wedding. The bride and the groom were happy to sign the marriage contract and cut the wedding cake. They were fantastic in their beautiful outfits. The bride wore gold bracelet and a necklace, and the groom was fantastic in his traditional galabeya. The guests loved the reception where they ate meals and danced very much.

Lessons 3&4

"Buying things online"

The internet has made buying and selling things very easy. If you want to sell something online, just share its pictures with some information about it and wait for buyers. Make sure that all the information you share is true. Be careful and don't share any personal information about yourself, like date of birth, address or bank account details. If you have to meet the buyer, meet them in a public place and don't go alone.

Lessons 5&6

Friends are like stars. They are always there, shining brightly in our life. They make life more enjoyable and meaningful. Without friends, one always feels alone and lonely. A true friend is the one who is always there for you when you need help. You can make face-to-face or online friendships. Online friendships can sometimes be very good. Last month, while I was chatting with someone from Canada, I found out that we have many things in common, like reading books and listening to music.

Al Azhar

Weekends are special to me. On weekends, I can do many things like visiting my grandparents, going to the sports club, meeting my friends or staying home to relax. On weekends, I sometimes go out with my family to the public park where we can enjoy our time there playing games and having snacks. we can go to the zoo to see the animals there. Weekends are very important for everyone to have and enjoy after a whole week of hard work.

General Exercises Unit 1

An email to congratulate your friend for passing his exams

To: basem200@yahoo.com
From: salah2010@gmail.com.
Subject: My favorite sport

Hi, Basem,

How are you? I'm so happy to hear that you passed your exams with good marks. I know you're a top student and I'm so happy for you and very proud of you. How were the exams? Were they difficult or easy? How did you prepare them?

Please, write soon. Have a great day!

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What gives us light and heat?
   a. The moon b. The stars c. The sun d. The earth
2. What goes around the Earth?
   a. The sun b. The moon c. The stars d. The sea

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amin asks Salem to go with him to the beach

Amin : Hi Salem. Would you like to come with me to the beach?

Salem : Sounds great! (1) .....

Amin : Don't forget your towel, snacks and drinks!

Salem : (2) ..... . I'll also bring a beach ball.

Amin : Perfect! We can play volleyball later.

Salem : Alright! (3) .....

Amin : Wow, this beach is so beautiful!

Salem : I know. Let's build a sandcastle.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In the wedding, the _____ was beautiful in her wedding dress.
   a. groom b. guest c. bride d. marriage
2. The groom wore a traditional galabeya. The opposite of "traditional" is _____
   a. modern b. old c. ancient d. fantastic
3. The bride and the groom signed the marriage _____.
   a. communication b. understanding c. celebration d. contract
4. The prefix "_____" is used to get the opposite of the adjective "formal".
   a. im- b. in- c. un- d. dis-
5. _____ is very important between the members of a family.
   a. Information b. Pollution c. Question d. Communication

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Hassan. I'm in grade 1 in a prep school. My school life is fun and busy. Every morning, I go to school at 8:00 am. My favorite subject is science because I love doing experiments. I also enjoy math and learning new things every day. During break, I play with my friends in the playground. After school, I attend a chess club where we practice and play matches. My teachers are kind and helpful, and **they** always encourage us to do our best. I enjoy school because I get to learn, make friends, and **participate** in different activities. It's a place where I grow and have fun.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- What is Hassan's favorite subject in school and why?

.....

2- How does Hassan spend his break at school?

.....

3- What does the underlined word "they" refer to?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What time does Hassan go to school?

a. 7:00 am b. 8:00 am c. 9:00 am d. 10:00 am

5. The underlined word "participate" means to .....

a. give up b. look after c. take part d. look for

6. Where does Hassan play matches?

a. At school. b. At the chess club. c. At home. d. At the gym.

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. at - grandparents' - lunch - was - my - I - having .....
2. a motorbike - has - family - a car - Whose - and ? .....
3. married - My - to - Ayman Amira - cousin. .....
4. with - two - I - brothers - sat - table - at. .....

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"My weekends" [اجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Exercises on Unit 2

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What does Sarah love to do?
   a. To watch movies. b. To read books.
   c. To play games. d. To cook.
2. Where does Sarah go every weekend?
   a. To the park. b. To the zoo. c. To the library. d. To the cinema.
3. What type of books does Sarah enjoy the most?
   a. Adventure. b. Science. c. Comedy. d. Romance.
4. What is Sarah's dream?
   a. To be a teacher. b. To travel around the world.
   c. To write her own book. d. To become a doctor.

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amal and Hoor are talking about a visit to the museum:

Amal : Hi Hoor, did you go to the museum yesterday?
Hoor : ① ..... . It was really cool!
Amal : ② .....?
Hoor : I saw some old paintings and statues.
Amal : That sounds interesting. ③ .....?
Hoor : Yes, I learned about ancient Egypt.
Amal : That's great! ④ ..... .
Hoor : You should go. It's really exciting.
Amal : OK. I'll ask my father to take me to the museum next weekend.
Hoor : Well. ⑤ .....!

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

her - delicious - guests - hers - celebrating

Yesterday, I went to my cousin's wedding. It was a big party with lots of ① ..... .
Everyone was happy and ② ..... . They were dancing and eating ③ ..... food.
It was a special day for my cousin and ④ ..... groom.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Hossam. Last weekend, my family and I went to see the New Capital City of Egypt. It was a long drive, but it was worth. The city is really big, beautiful, and modern. **Its** buildings are tall, and the streets are **wide** and clean. There are lots of parks and green spaces, too. We had a great time in the New Capital City.

We also watched the Iconic Tower which is the tallest building in Egypt and Africa. Finally, we went to a shopping mall and bought some souvenirs.

It was a really fantastic day which I can't forget.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How did Hossam feel about the New Capital City?

.....

2. What was the most interesting thing Hossam saw in the New Capital City?

.....

3. Would you like to visit the New Capital City? Why / why not?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. What is the main idea of this story?

a. The history of Egypt
b. A fun day
c. The Suez Canal
d. The Grand Egyptian Museum

5. The underlined word "Its" in the text refers to .....

a. The great Pyramids
b. the New Capital City
c. The Cairo Tower
d. a big mosque

6. The underlined word "**wide**" is an antonym for .....

a. narrow
b. big
c. delicious
d. fast

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister is a great ..... She takes wonderful pictures of nature.

a. teacher
b. photographer
c. receptionist
d. engineer

2. I sent a smiley face ..... to my friend wishing her a happy birthday.

a. contract
b. marriage
c. service
d. emoji

3. The ..... park is a fantastic place to visit on weekends.

a. public
b. special
c. private
d. general

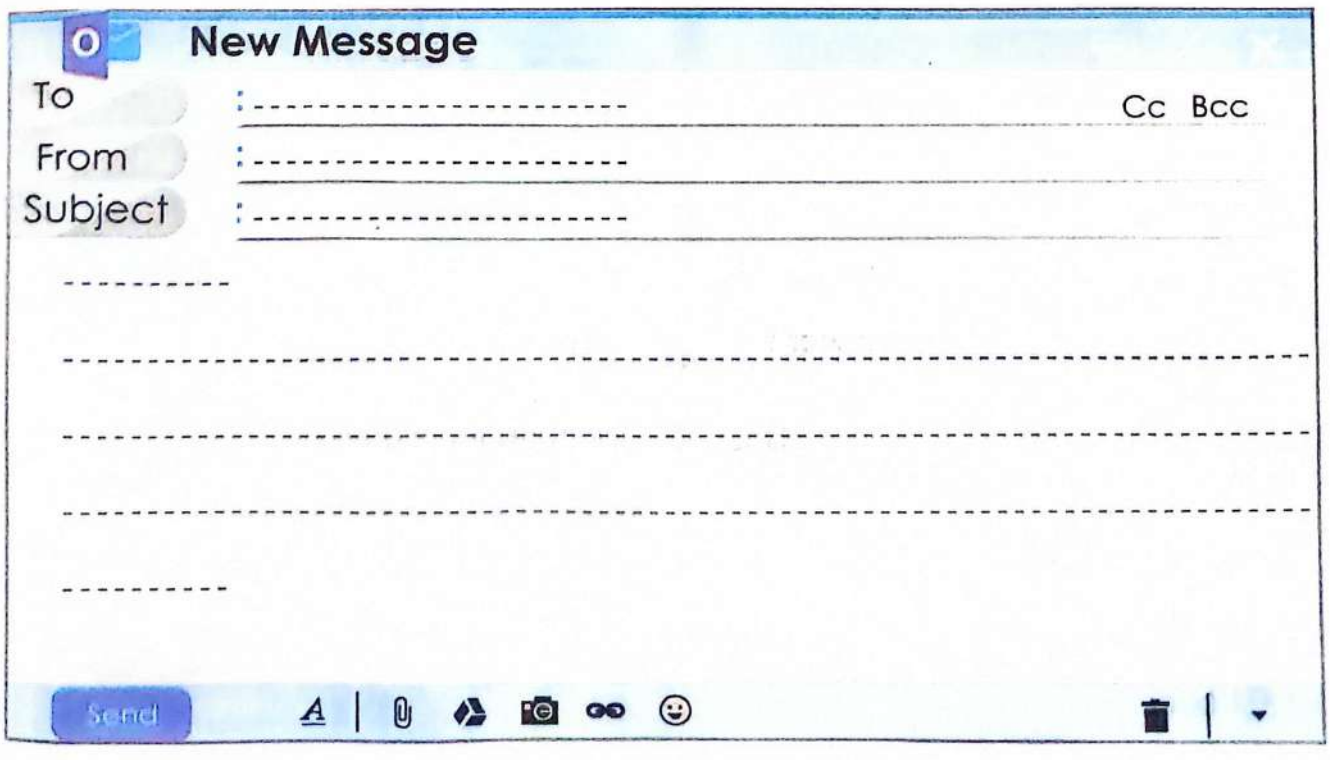
4. The suffix _____ changes the verb communicate into a noun.
   a. -ful b. -less c. -ity d. -ion
5. We are going to move to our new _____ next Friday. We bought it a month ago.
   a. apartment b. arrangement c. development d. encouragement
6. They say that _____ weather is nice.
   a. tomorrow b. tomorrows c. tomorrow's d. tomorrows'
7. This's Omar's idea. It isn't _____.
   a. me b. I c. mine d. myself
8. Here's the _____ room. You can find Mr. Ali there sitting with the other teachers.
   a. teachers' b. teacher c. teachers d. teacher's
9. The children are in the garden. Call them to have _____ lunch.
   a. they b. them c. their d. theirs
10. _____ you open the door for me, please?
    a. Must b. Will c. Do d. Might

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Please, don't use _____ (me) mobile phone.
2. This is my _____ (parents) room.
3. _____ (Do) you lend me your ruler?
4. This pen is not _____ (you). It's mine.

E Writing

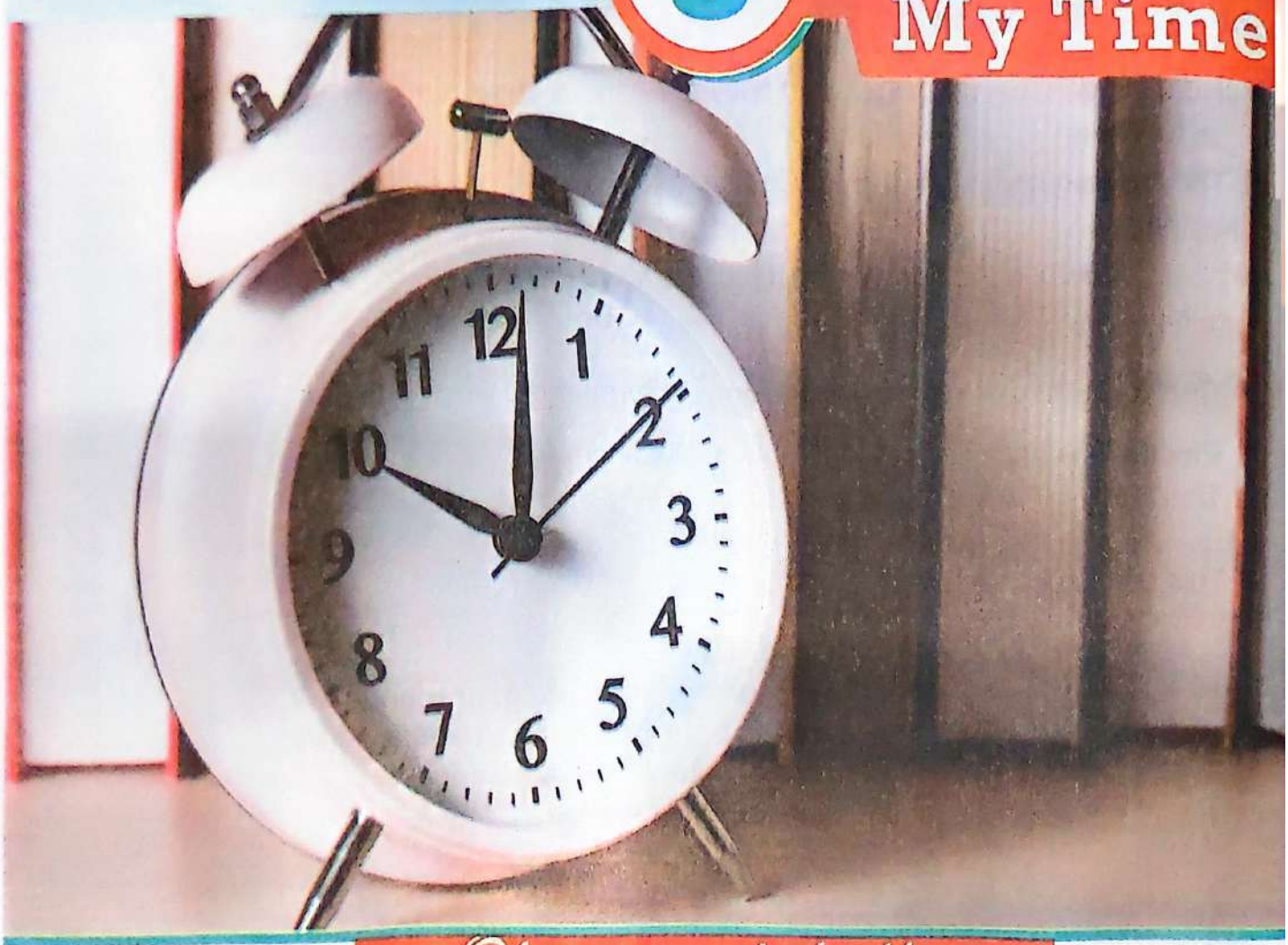
7 Write an e-mail of (80-90) words to congratulate your friend on passing his exams. Your name is Salah, and your friend's name is Basem. Your e-mail address is salah2010@gmail.com and your friend's e-mail address is basem200@yahoo.com



Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 3 My Time



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

An email about ways to spend your free time; A letter to a problem page; An unusual Hobby; *a short story.*

Listening:

A dialogue about free-time activities.

Writing:

a forum post about finding friends with similar interests.

Speaking:

Talking about ways to spend your free time.

Language:

The present continuous tense; *Subjec and object pronouns*

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	walk in nature	يمشي في الطبيعة
hobby (n)	هواية	help in community	يساعد في المجتمع
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد	"to do" list	قائمة المهام
write a journal	يدون مذكرات	shopping mall (n)	سوق تجاري
evening classes	دروس مسائية	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
sports field (n)	ملعب رياضي	captain (n)	قائد الفريق/كابتن
tennis court (n)	ملعب تنس	focus (ed)	يركز
take regular exercises	يتدرب بانتظام	organize (d)	ينظم
first aid (n)	الإسعافات الأولية	train (ed)	يتدرب
recipe (n)	وصفة طهي		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

park (n)	حديقة	actually (adv)	حقا/فعلا
lake (n)	بحيرة	chef (n)	طاه
healthy (adj)	صحي	skill (n)	مهارة
activity (n)	نشاط	lovely (adj)	جميل
different (adj)	مختلف	garden (n)	حديقة
thoughts (n)	أفكار	cinema (n)	دار عرض/سينما
important (adj)	هام	cafe (n)	مقهى
class (n)	درس/حصة	game (n)	لعبة/مباراة
cook (n)	طباخ	describe (d)	يصف
idea (n)	فكرة	use (d)	يستخدم
table tennis (n)	تنس الطاولة	need (ed)	يحتاج
umbrella (n)	مظلة	enjoy (ed)	يستمتع ب

Unit 3 My Time

Definitions

spend time with family	يقضي الوقت مع العائلة	to do activities with your parents, grandparents, brothers and sisters
write a journal	يكتب يوميات	to describe your thoughts and activities in writing
learn new skills	يتعلم مهارات جديدة	to take courses to find out how to do different activities
help in community	يساعد في المجتمع	to do things for other people where you live
take regular exercises	يتدرب بانتظام	to do sports or other healthy activities
walk in nature	يتنزه في الطبيعة	to visit and enjoy parks, lakes or other green spaces

Expressions & Prepositions

spend time	يقضي وقت	do a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
learn new skills	يتعلم مهارات جديدة	take courses	يأخذ دورات
do sports	يؤدي رياضة	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة
do activities	يقوم بعمل أنشطة	find out	يكتشف
get ready	يستعد	(be) able to	قادر على
the sports day	اليوم الرياضي	around us	حولنا
That's great	هذا عظيم	think about	يفكر في
looks like	يبدو و كأنه	both of	كلا من

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
healthy صحي	well	unhealthy غير صحى
different مختلف	various	similar مشابه
important هام	significant	unimportant غير مهم
interesting شيق	exciting	boring ممل
new جديد	modern	old قديم
regular منتظم	steady	irregular غير منتظم
lovely جميل	beautiful	terrible / ugly فظيع
able to قادر على	capable of	unable to غير قادر على

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
un-	تعطي العكس	unusual
-y	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	healthy
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	actually

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي وقت	spent	spent
take	ياخذ	took	taken
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
get	يحصل على	got	got
leave	يغادر	left	left
know	يعرف	knew	known

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 time

- **time** الوقت (اسم لا يعد)

Ex. What time are you going out tonight?

- **time** مرة (اسم يعد) **times** مرات

Ex. How many times do you go to the park? – Once a week.

2 like +(to + inf.) / like = (V + ing)

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **(like)** إما **(to + inf.)** أو **(V + ing)** بدون تغير في المعنى

Ex. I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well.

Ex. I like playing with my friends.

3 journal = diary / dairy

- **journal = diary** مذكرات

Ex. Before I go to bed, I write a journal (diary).

- **dairy** منتجات الألبان

Ex. You should eat less dairy.

4 spend / time – money

- **spend time** يقضي وقت **+ v.ing**

Ex. I spend my free time reading books.

- **spend money** ينفق أموال **+ on ...**

Ex. She spends a lot of money on clothes.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother likes ..... breakfast in the morning.
   a. to have b. having c. to having d. a & b are correct
2. I usually write a ..... before I go to bed every night.
   a. dairy b. book c. menu d. journal
3. How ..... time did you spend reading this story?
   a. many b. long c. much d. old
4. Alaa ..... a lot of time answering the question.
   a. paid b. sent c. spent d. gave

Reading and listening skills

SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص

New Message

To : Asser Cc Bcc

From : Mahmoud

Subject : RE: Hello new friend

Hi Asser,

Thanks for your email! You asked me about my free time(1).
This is an important(2) year at school and I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well!
In the mornings before school, I write a "To do" list(3) of things I need to do. It really helps me to organize(4) my day. After school, I do different things. It's important to take regular(5) exercise, so on Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football with my friends. I like playing with them! They help me a lot. I also like to learn new skills(6), so I go to evening classes(7). At the moment, I am learning first aid(8)! I want to be able to(9) help people.
On the weekends, I spend time(10) with my family. We like to go for walks in nature(11). We don't take our phones, so we can enjoy what is around us. There are some really lovely(12) parks and gardens in this city. Sometimes my brother and I help in the community(13). He is a chef(14), and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant. I love to learn recipes(15) from him. My mom is a good cook, too. I think my brother learned a lot from her!
Every night, before I go to bed, I write a journal(16). It helps me to think about what I have done and focus(17) on good things. I think it helps me to sleep better, too!
Tell me how you spend your free time. Maybe(18) I can get some good ideas!

Bye! Mahmoud

Send

١. وقت الفراغ
٢. هام
٣. قائمة المهام
٤. ينظم
٥. منتظمة
٦. مهارات
٧. دروس مسائية
٨. اسعافات اولية
٩. قادر على
١٠. أقضي الوقت
١١. الطبيعة
١٢. جميل
١٣. المجتمع
١٤. طاه
١٥. وصفات الطبخ
١٦. مذكرات
١٧. اركز
١٨. ربما

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Summarize the second paragraph. لخص الفقرة الثانية
2. Give words from the passage that means: beautiful - diary. استخرج كلمات من النص تعنى... ...

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. To use my free time well I usually write a to do list. لكى استخدم وقت فراغى بشكل جيد اقوم بكتابة قائمة المهام
2. It is important to do regular exercise to keep fit. من المهم ان نتمرن بشكل منتظم لكى نحافظ على اللياقة البدنية
3. I take evening classes to learn new skills. ادرس فى صفوف مسائية لتعلم مهارات جديدة
4. I love to learn recipes from my mother. احب تعلم وصفات الطبخ الجديدة من والدتى

Answers:
1. I write a to do list to organize my day. I do regular exercises and have evening classes. Now, I'm learning first aid to help people.
2. lovely - journal

SB Page (30)

Pre-listening question:

- Where would you and your best friend like to go?

Listen to the dialog. Which of the places in exercise 1 are they going?

Maleeka :Hi, Mazen.

Mazen : Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing?

Maleeka : I'm getting ready(1) to go out. Do you still want to go to the park?

Mazen : Actually,(2) let's go to the tennis court"(3).

Maleeka : OK, good idea.

(Maleeka searching noisily for something)

Mazen : What are you doing now?

Maleeka : I'm looking for something. I must find my umbrella(4) before I leave(5) the house.

Mazen :Why? It isn't raining (6) at the moment.

Maleeka : It isn't for the rain. It's for the sun!

Mazen : Oh, OK. Well, see you soon. Bye!

(phone ringtone)

Samer :Hi, Mazen.

Mazen : Hi, Samer. Do you want to come to the tennis court with me and Maleeka?

Samer : Thanks, but I can't. I'm doing my math project (7). Have fun!

Mazen : Thanks! Bye! [pause]

١. يستعد
٢. حقا
٣. ملعب التنس
٤. مظلة
٥. أغادر
٦. تمطر
٧. مشروع

Mazen&Maleeka : Hi, Adam!

Adam : Hi, Mazen. Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing?

٨. التدريب

Maleeka : We're going to the tennis court. What are you doing?

Adam : I've just finished training (8) with my football team. Now, I'm meeting a friend at the cinema.

Adam : I'm meeting Samer.

Mazen&Maleeka : What? He said he had to do his math project!

Adam : Yes, but he finished early, and now he can come!

SB Page (31)

Complete the text with the present continuous form of the verb in brackets;

Good afternoon! As you know, our students **aren't having** lessons this afternoon because it's the school sports day! At the moment, two students **are running** and their parents **are watching** them. That's great! Some students **are playing** tennis on the tennis court behind me. It looks like an interesting game. The football teams **are getting** ready for their match. Wait a minute! One student **is walking** onto the football field. He's the captain of one of the teams! Now both of the teams are there. It's time for the game to start!

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada was going to the club and she meets Rahma

Nada : Hello, Rahma ! Where are you going?

Rahma : Hi, Nada. I am going to the cinema.

Nada : ① ----------?

Rahma : ② ---------- . What about you?

Nada : ③ ----------

Rahma : Why?

Nada : To play a football match.

Rahma : ④ ----------?

Nada : Yes, I am in the school football team.

Rahma : I wish you good luck.

Nada : ⑤ ----------

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Writing a list helps you to _____ your day.
   a. take b. organize c. kill d. spend
2. I always write a/ an _____ before I go to bed to remember what I have done.
   a. journal b. letter c. menu d. email
3. Raneem likes cooking and loves to learn new _____ from her mother.
   a. skills b. recipes c. skies d. ways
4. Osama has a lot of work to do. He doesn't have much _____ time.
   a. high b. free c. part d. full
5. I had a _____ course to help in case of emergency.
   a. day care b. first aid c. break time d. free time

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. My brother is healthy. He usually _____ sports on the weekends.
   a. makes b. does c. needs d. organizes
7. I go to evening classes because I like to learn new _____
   a. skills b. skulls c. skies d. tasks
8. On the weekends, Riham likes to _____ time with her family.
   a. help b. get c. spend d. organize
9. We should _____ in the community we live in.
   a. organize b. know c. focus d. help
10. My uncle is a _____ He makes delicious dishes.
    a. teacher b. doctor c. chef d. cooker
11. Last week we played two _____ of chess with my friend Ahmed.
    a. games b. courts c. fields d. classes
12. There is a large swimming _____ in the club near our house.
    a. pool b. field c. court d. mall
13. There are some lovely _____ in our city where you can go for walks in nature.
    a. pools b. parks c. malls d. courts

14. I was the _____ of the football team at school.

a. chef b. captain c. cook d. teacher

15. Last week, we went to the shopping _____ to buy some clothes.

a. pool b. field c. mall d. court

16. You should do regular exercise. The antonym of regular is _____.

a. normal b. ordinary c. quiet d. irregular

17. The prefix _____ changes the adjective usual to the opposite.

a. dis- b. im- c. ir- d. un-

Expressions & prepositions

18. To be fit, it is important to _____ regular exercises.

a. take b. play c. go d. walk

19. We need to _____ on the good thing we do and do it again

a. think b. know c. focus d. learn

20. On weekends, my friends and I like to go _____ walks along the Nile.

a. on b. from c. to d. for

21. You must be able _____ speak French to take the job.

a. on b. from c. to d. for

22. Do you _____ any sport at school?

a. do b. make c. have d. go

3 Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. skills - learn - How - new - you - do?

---

2. the - cinema - at - meeting - I'm - friend - a.

---

3. nature - like - We - in - for - go - to - walks.



Language قواعد لغوية

The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

I → am

He - she - it الاسم المفرد → is

They - we - you الاسم الجمع → are

→ + V + ing

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام) .

Ex. I am playing football now.

Ex. They are watching TV now.

- يستخدم ليعبر عن أحداث بدأت من فترة ومستمرة ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام:

Ex. I'm learning French these days.

- يستخدم أيضًا ليعبر عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. My dad is staying at home today. He usually goes to work at that time.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- now (الآن)
- at the present time (في الوقت الحاضر)
- listen (استمع)
- Look! (انظر)
- at the moment (في هذة اللحظة)

Negative النفى

- عند نفى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بعد am - is - are.

Ex. He is playing football now.

Ex. He is not playing football now. النفي

Ex. They are watching TV now.

Ex. They are not watching TV now. النفي

Question السؤال

- وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم am - is - are على الفاعل.

- وعند عمل سؤال بأداة استفهام نستخدم القاعدة الآتية:

→ (أداة الاستفهام) + am - is - are + الفاعل + الفعل + تكملة الجملة + ?

Ex. He is playing football.
- Is he playing football?
- What is he doing?

Ex. She is watching TV.
- Is she watching TV?
- What is she doing?

Ex. Ali is eating in the kitchen.
- Is Ali eating in the kitchen?
- Where is Ali eating?



١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق تحذف عند إضافة (ing).

-take ..... taking -have ..... having -come .....coming

٢ - إذا كان الفعل مقطع واحد و انتهى بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن عند إضافة (ing).

-jog ..... jogging -run ..... running -get.....getting

٣- بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم في زمن المضارع المستمر أو اي زمن مستمر وهي أفعال الحواس والملكية و التفكير و الإدراك مثل:

hear	see	have	own	understand	know	think
يسمع	يرى	يمتلك	يمتلك	يفهم	يعرف	يعتقد

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We are _____ to the tennis court now.
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
2. I _____ doing my homework at the moment.
   a. was b. am c. were d. is
3. Are you _____ to the cafe?
   a. walking b. walk c. walked d. walks
4. She _____ eating at the moment. She's sleeping.
   a. is b. was c. isn't d. wasn't
5. At the moment, two students _____ and their parents are watching them.
   a. is running b. ran c. run d. are running

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. I'm _____ my homework now.
   a. do b. did c. done d. doing
7. She _____ trying to open the can.
   a. am b. is c. are d. has
8. They _____ football at the moment.
   a. am playing b. is playing c. are playing d. was playing
9. Samy and his sister _____ a cake in the kitchen now.
   a. are making b. is making c. make d. was making

10. Please be quiet , I _____ at the moment.
a. think b. am thinking c. thinking d. have thought

11. I _____ very hard this year.
a. work b. am working c. working d. was working

12. My friend Ahmed lives in Alexandria but he _____ with us at the moment.
a. stays b. is staying c. stay d. staying

13. I _____ she does not speak French .
a. think b. am thinking c. am not thinking d. thinks

14. Listen to that woman over there. What _____?
a. does she say b. she says c. is she saying d. was she saying

15. At the moment, some students _____ tennis on the tennis court behind me.
a. playing b. have played c. are playing d. were playing

16. Our students aren't _____ lessons this afternoon as it is the school sports day.
a. take b. taken c. taking d. being taken

17. Please be quiet. The children _____
a. are slept b. sleeping c. are sleeping d. is sleeping

18. I'm not _____ much coffee these days.
a. drink b. drinking c. drinks d. drank

19. They _____ a new school in our town nowadays.
a. are built b. are building c. were building d. was building

20. _____ the boys doing their homework now?
a. Were b. Are c. Have d. Do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Look! She _____ (cook) the meat.
2. He _____ (walk) to school every day.
3. We _____ (gets) up early every morning.
4. Are the boys _____ (play) football at the moment?
5. Listen, someone _____ (sing) in the street.
6. They _____ (playing) tennis now.
7. Are you _____ (visit) Aswan next Friday?
8. My mom is in the kitchen. She _____ (cook) lunch.
9. Raneem _____ (have) a course in English these days.
10. Ahmed and Omar aren't _____ (watch) TV now.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Huda is talking to a tourist.

Huda : Welcome to Egypt. ① .....?

Tourist : I'm from France.

Huda : Is it your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : ② .....

Huda : Where are you staying?

Tourist : ③ .....

Huda : ④ .....?

Tourist : I'll stay for fifteen days.

Huda : What places will you visit?

Tourist : ⑤ .....

2 Read and complete:

dark - nature - house - weekends - light

Omar and his friend Ahmed like going for walks in ① _____ to enjoy the fresh air. They usually go on ② _____. Once they had a terrible accident. They went near an old ③_____ where nobody lived. It was ④ _____ inside. When they got nearer, some dogs barked at them. They were afraid and decided not to go near empty houses again.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I usually write a "**to do**" _____ of the things I need to do.

   a. menu b. letter c. list d. email

2. Writing a _____ helps me to think about the things I have done.

   a. magazine b. journal c. film d. dairy

3. My uncle makes food for hungry people in his _____

   a. mall b. court c. restaurant d. field

4. Last night, we _____ a lot of time talking about our last trip to the zoo.
   a. organized b. spent c. sent d. found
5. We should _____ regular exercises to keep fit.
   a. take b. make c. hold d. go
6. After school, I sometimes go to the _____ to watch a movie.
   a. pool b. mall c. cinema d. market
7. _____ Tommy walking on the grass?
   a. Are b. Does c. Is d. Am
8. Amany is _____ with her friends in the park.
   a. walks b. walk c. walked d. walking
9. What _____, Rana? – I'm getting ready to go out.
   a. do you do b. were you doing c. are you doing d. have you done
10. Anas_____ his homework now. He is watching TV.
    a. is doing b. was doing c. isn't doing d. weren't doing
11. Adam and Samer _____ tennis on the tennis court at the moment.
    a. is playing b. are playing c. am playing d. were playing
12. The football teams _____ ready for their match. SB
    a. is getting b. are getting c. am getting d. was getting

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mother is _____ (stay) at our house this week.
2. I _____ (eat) my dinner right now.
3. Why isn't Ali _____ (play) football tomorrow?
4. They are _____ (open) a new shopping mall downtown.
5. My sister _____ (learn) Spanish.

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. play - Thursdays - I - friends - football - with - on - my. _____

_____

2. are - now - doing - What - you?

_____

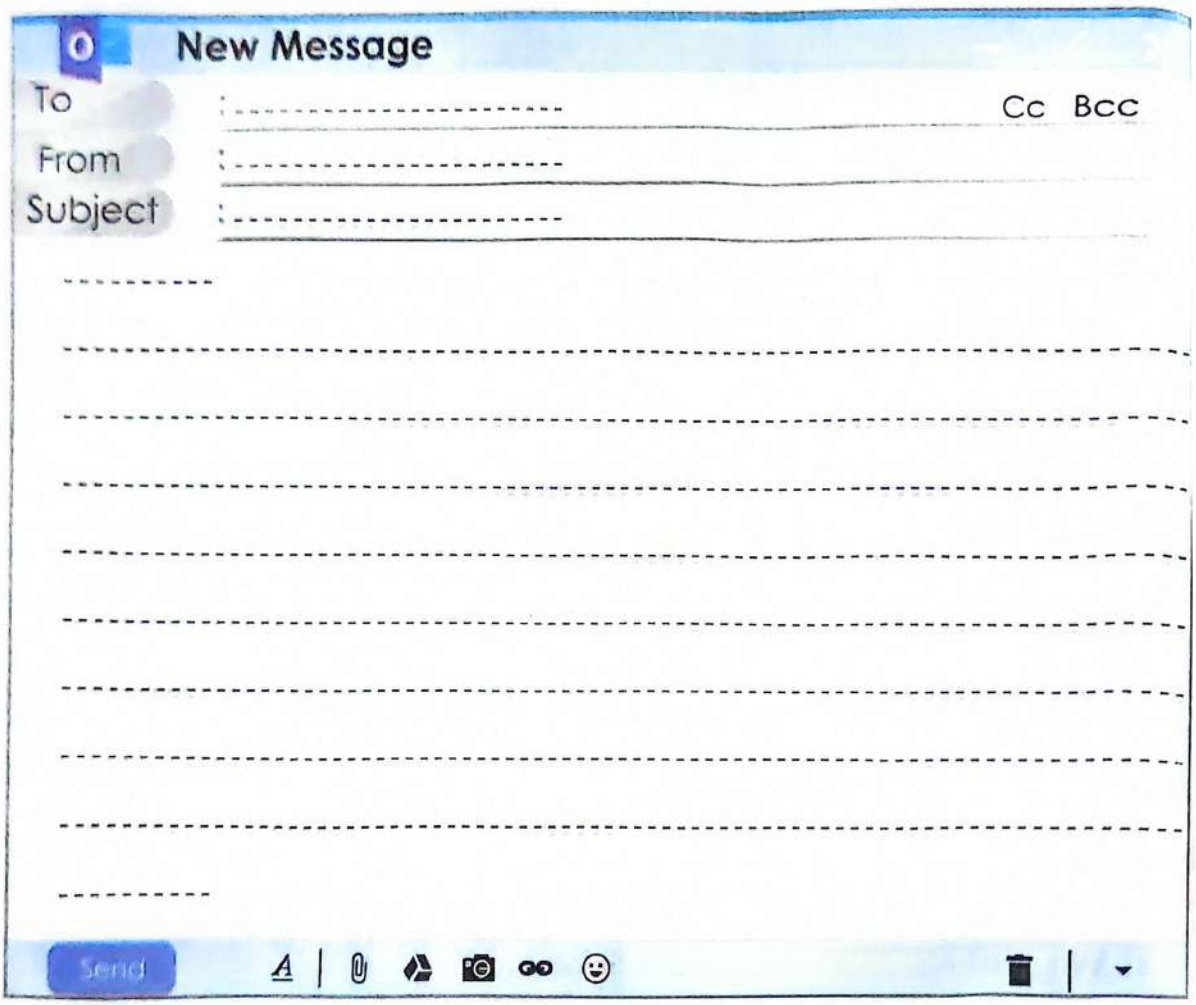
3. going - the - We're - court - to - tennis.

6 Write an email of about (80-90) words on: (ب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your cousin Nader who is studying in London telling him about your interests a asking him if he has the same interests.

Your name is Ali and your email address is pupil@prepschool.com

His email address is nader@gmail.com



Answer these questions to help you write the email.

1- What are you interested in? **2- When do you practise it?**

3- Where do you practise it? **4- With whom do you practise it?**

- اجابة الاسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

- I'm interested in.....
- I usually practise it .....
- I also enjoy reading and taking walks.....
- I even write in my journal .....

Lessons 3&4

SB pages 32 - 35

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bazaar (n)	سوق/(بازار)	bracelet (n)	أسورة
stall (n)	كشك/محل صغير	ingredients (n)	مقادير/مكونات
homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	extra (adj)	إضافي
breaktime (n)	وقت الاستراحة/فسحة	school principal (n)	مدير مدرسة
beads (n)	خرز	advice (n)	نصيحة
string (n)	خيط	present (ed)	يقدم
jewelery (n)	مجوهرات		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

lemonade (n)	عصير ليمون	clear (adj)	واضح
cool (adj)	بارد/رائع	surprised (adj)	مندهش
weather (n)	طقس	expert (n)	خبير
maybe (adv)	ربما	respect (ed)	يحترم
cupcakes (n)	كب كيك/كعك محلى	replace (d)	يستبدل
stressed (adj)	متوتر/مضغوط نفسيا	decorate (d)	يزين/يزخرف
toys (n)	لعب أطفال	relax (ed)	يسترخي
polite (adj)	مهذب	discuss (ed)	يناقش

Expressions & Prepositions

That's a good idea	هذه فكرة جيدة	I'm not sure about that	لست متاكد بخصوص
I agree	أوافق	make a plan	يعمل خطة
right now	الآن/حالا	do well	يؤدي جيدا
I don't think so	لا أعتقد هذا	join a club	ينضم لنادي
That's true	هذا صحيح	It's fun	إنه شيء ممتع
There you go	ها هو الناتج	after-school classes	حصص بعد المدرسة
That's cool	هذا رائع	worried about	قلق بشان
take a long time to	تستغرق وقت طويل لكي	ask for	يطلب
almost over	يكاد ينتهى	at breaktime	في الاستراحة
		how about	ماذا عن
		give advice	يسدى النصح

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
agree	يوافق	accept		disagree	لا يوافق
calm	هادئ	quiet		noisy	صاخب
relaxed	مرتاح	calm		worried	قلق
best	الأفضل	finest		worst	أسوأ
kind	طيب/عطوف	cruel		unkind	غير عطوف
polite	مهذب	decent		impolite	غير مهذب

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
dis-	تعطي العكس	disagree
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	discussion
im-	تعطي العكس	impolite

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
give	يعطي	gave	given

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 cool

• **cool** بارد

Ex. I'd love a glass of cool lemonade.

• **cool** رائع / جميل

Ex. Look, I have made a bracelet from beads and string. – That's cool!

2 hard / hardly

• **hard** بجد

Ex. My father works hard.

• **hard** صعب

Ex. This is a hard question.

• **hard** جاد/ مجد

Ex. My father is a hard worker.

• **hardly** تقريبا لا/ بالكاد

Ex. He hardly knows any French.

3 advice / advise

• **advice (n)** نصيحة

Ex. Who do you ask for advice if you need help?

• **advise (v) advised** ينصح

Ex. My parents always advise me to sleep early.

4 take time to + inf تستغرق وقت لكى

تستغرق وقت لكي

Ex. It took a long time to get to school.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Samy is clever because he always works _____
   a. lazy b. hard c. slow d. hardly
2. My father usually gives me good _____
   a. advice b. time c. advise d. court
3. Drinking _____ juice is refreshing in this hot weather.
   a. hot b. warm c. cool d. boiling
4. Lazy students _____ do their homework regularly.
   a. difficult b. hard c. simply d. hardly

Reading and listening skills

SB Page (32)

SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص

Salma : Hi, Sahar!

Sahar : Hi, Salma. What are you drinking?

Salma : Homemade(1) lemonade. My friend Shorouk and her brother are selling it from their stall(2) at the bazaar(3)".

Sahar : That's a good idea, isn't it?

Salma : Yes, I agree. The weather(4) is so hot.

Sahar : I'd love a glass of cool lemonade right now!

Salma : Well, why don't you buy some?

Sahar : I don't think so. Our break(5) is almost over(6).

Salma : OK. What's that you're making?

Sahar : It's jewelery(7). Look, I put these beads(8) onto some string(9) and there you go - a bracelet(10)!

Salma : That's cool(11). You could sell them at the next school bazaar.

Sahar : But they take a long time(12) to make.

Salma : That's true. Why don't we sell some of our old toys(13)?

Sahar : I'm not sure about that. It would be nice to make something. I know, how about cupcakes(14)? Everyone loves cupcakes!

Salma : Great, let's find the ingredients(15)...

١. صناعة منزلية
٢. كشك/محل
٣. سوق
٤. طقس
٥. استراحة/فسحة
٦. تقريبا انتهت
٧. مجوهرات
٨. خرز
٩. خيط
١٠. اسورة
١١. هذا رائع
١٢. يستغرق وقت طويل
١٣. لعب اطفال
١٤. كعك
١٥. مقادير

SB Page (34)

"Ask Jana": Share your problems with Jana

Dear Jana,

I'm writing to you about my best friend Fareeda. She's a good friend and a kind(1) person. She works hard(2) at school. My friends and I are really worried(3) about her. She studies all the time and she is very stressed(4). Her parents(5) work hard, and they want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at breaktime(6) and she always asks our teacher for extra(7) homework.

١. عطوف
٢. بجد
٣. قلق
٤. متوتر
٥. والدين
٦. وقت الفسحة
٧. إضافي

Speaking

1 Asking for and giving advice طلب وإعطاء النصيحة

• عند طلب النصيحة أو إعطاءها المختلفة فهناك بعض العبارات التي نستخدمها للتعبير عن ذلك:

Asking for advice	Giving advice
Is it a good idea to ...?	I think we could... ... أعتقد أننا يمكننا
هل من الجيد أن .....؟	You should / shouldn't...
Do you think we should...?	ينبغي/لا ينبغي ...
هل تعتقد أننا يجب أن ...؟	If I were you , I'd...
What do you think we should do...?	لو كنت مكانك كنت سوف ...
ماذا تعتقد أننا يجب أن نفعل ...؟	I advise you to / not to...
	أنصحك أن/ألا ...

2 Agreeing & Disagreeing in a discussion القبول والرفض عند المناقشة

• عندما نتناقش مع الأشخاص الآخرين في الموضوعات المختلفة فهناك بعض العبارات التي نستخدمها للتعبير عن الموافقة أو عدم الموافقة:

Agreeing	Disagreeing
Yes, I agree.	No, I disagree / No, I don't agree.
OK.	I don't think so.
That's true.	I'm not sure about that.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Maha is talking to Aliaa about free time.

Maha : How do you usually spend your free time?

Aliaa : ❶ ----------

Maha : ❷ ----------?

Aliaa : I like reading short stories.

Maha : Where do you get them?

Aliaa : ❸ ----------

Maha : Can I borrow some of your books?

Aliaa : ❹ ----------

Maha : ❺ ----------?

Aliaa : You can take them tomorrow after school.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. We can use beads and _____ to make a bracelet.
   a. glass b. lemonade c. cupcakes d. string
2. My uncle has a _____ in the bazaar where he sells jewelery.
   a. market b. company c. stall d. court
3. Taking a _____ from work can help refresh your mind.
   a. break b. breath c. time d. money
4. She made a beautiful _____ with colorful beads.
   a. glass b. bracelet c. cake d. picture
5. She bought all the _____ to make a delicious cake.
   a. ingredients b. jewelery c. cupcakes d. flowers
6. Sahar is _____ at work, she decided to take a day off to relax.
   a. stressed b. happy c. relaxed d. calm
7. She loves to make _____ cookies for her friends.
   a. outdoor b. homemade c. windy d. homework

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Students go to the school bazaar in the _____ to buy what they need.
   a. class b. break c. evening d. night
9. Good students usually ask their teachers and parents for _____
   a. advice b. advise c. money d. food
10. Fareeda is a good student. She always works _____
    a. hardly b. hard c. hardest d. harden
11. The teacher was _____ when Ameera asked him for more homework.
    a. surprised b. afraid c. kind d. relaxed
12. The _____ she prepared was refreshing on a hot day.
    a. bead b. lemonade c. cupcake d. lesson
13. _____ we can go for a walk in the park later.
    a. Possible b. Hardly c. Maybe d. May
14. Her _____ were the best at the bakery.
    a. beads b. lemonade c. cupcakes d. juice
15. The _____ breeze in the evening was refreshing after the hot sun.
    a. warm b. hot c. cool d. boiling

16. We don't go out in bad _____.
a. whether b. winter c. weather d. rain

17. We need a piece of _____ to tie this tree to the wall.
a. glass b. lemonade c. cupcakes d. string

18. I feel more relaxed on the beach. The antonym of relaxed is _____.
a. calm b. worried c. happy d. quiet

19. The prefix _____ changes the verb agree to the opposite.
a. dis- b. im- c. ir- d. un-

Expressions & prepositions

20. Let's _____ a plan to visit the new museum this weekend.
a. act b. make c. do d. help

21. She was worried _____ her exam but studied hard.
a. about b. for c. over d. on

22. Don't worry! You will _____ well in the competition.
a. make b. do c. win d. lose



Language قواعد لغوية

Subject and object pronouns

- نستخدم ضمائر الفاعل عندما نتحدث عن من قام بالفعل.
- نستخدم ضمائر المفعول عندما نتحدث عن من يتلقى الفعل (من وقع عليه الفعل).

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Example
I	me	I love my mom and she loves me.
He	him	He is smiling at me and I'm smiling at him.
She	her	She gave her a present.
It	it	It is a cat. I played with it.
We	us	We helped him and he helped us.
They	them	They asked us for money and we gave them.
You	you	You respect us and we respect you.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We go to the park and walk in nature with _____.
   a. he b. she c. them d. we
2. _____ can help you.
   a. Us b. Me c. Her d. She
3. We do regular exercise. It helps _____ relax.
   a. I b. us c. they d. he
4. I asked _____ for advice.
   a. he b. we c. them d. they
5. _____ is learning new skills in after-school classes.
   a. Me b. He c. Him d. Her

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. They asked _____ to help in the community and she agreed.
   a. she b. hers c. herself d. her
7. Ahmed and I are brothers. _____ always help each other.
   a. We b. Our c. Us d. Ours
8. You can go with _____ to the club on Thursday.
   a. me b. I c. my d. mine
9. My baby brother is crying . Can you hear _____ ?
   a. he b. his c. him d. her
10. Omar and Kareem are best friends. _____ are both in grade 5.
    a. He b. They c. Them d. Their
11. I always ask _____ for advice when I have a problem.
    a. they b. he c. them d. she
12. Rasha likes Fareeda and she is worried about _____
    a. she b. hers c. herself d. her
13. We should have milk. It is good for _____
    a. our b. she c. us d. we

14. Are you going to invite _____ to your party?
a. them b. they c. their d. we

15. My friend and I have money. _____ can go shopping.
a. They b. We c. Us d. Them

16. My sister isn't here. _____ is at work.
a. Her b. She c. You d. It

17. Where is Nader? I want to talk to _____
a. he b. his c. him d. her

18. Rawan is a student. _____ is 14 years old.
a. She b. Him c. Her d. I

19. She is not coming with _____ on the trip.
a. they b. us c. we d. he

20. They gave Ali a present but _____ didn't like it.
a. him b. her c. he d. his

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. I have a journal and I write in _____ (its) every night.
2. _____ (Them) take regular exercise and play tennis three times a week.
3. We are helping _____ (he) with his homework tonight.
4. Samir needs to plan his free time. _____ (It) could write a " To do" list.
5. Do you want to come for a walk with _____ (I)?

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. She can help _____ (your).
7. We do regular exercise. _____ (He) helps us to relax.
8. He is learning new skills in after-school classes with _____ (we).
9. Why didn't you tell _____ (I) the truth?
10. Who is she? Do you know _____ (she)?
11. I met _____ (he) yesterday.
12. My friend sent me a postcard. _____ (its) was a nice present.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Nada are talking about food

Mona : What is your favorite food?

Nada : ❶ .....

Mona : Koshari! Fantastic. ❷ .....?

Nada : Tomatoes and pasta.

Mona : ❸ .....?

Nada : Yes, it is very delicious.

Mona : What else do you like?

Nada : ❹ .....What about you?

Mona : I like kofta very much. Let's go to a restaurant and have kofta.

Nada : ❺ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like to meet other people who _____ my hobby.
   a. draw b. relax c. share d. mix
2. He decided to _____ a club at school to meet new friends.
   a. record b. join c. go d. play
3. You're learning to play the guitar. That's _____
   a. cold b. cool c. hot d. bad
4. If you have a problem at school , you can ask the _____ for help.
   a. prince b. principal c. principle d. doctor
5. Salma sells homemade lemonade on her stall in the _____
   a. field b. bazaar c. pool d. court
6. _____ is a brave and strong man.
   a. We b. She c. He d. Him
7. Why don't you help _____ clean the flat?
   a. we b. she c. us d. he
8. We will be late if _____ doesn't hurry up.
   a. him b. she c. us d. her
9. My mother prepared some delicious cakes for _____
   a. I b. my c. mine d. me
10. Riham gave Omar the shopping list but _____ forgot to give him the money.
    a. her b. she c. his d. him

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I gave the book to ..... (she).
2. I can't see Omar. I think ..... (him) is playing football.
3. They invited ..... (he) to join their team.
4. We are going to the park. Do you want to come with ..... (we).
5. They waved at ..... (we) from across the street.
6. ..... (Them) are studying for the test.
7. I asked ..... (they) for help with my homework.
8. Mum is cooking dinner. Let's help ..... (she).
9. She thanked ..... (I) for the delicious meal.
10. Maha usually goes to the library ..... (Her) loves reading.

4 Read and complete:

wedding - success - marks - invited - party

Adel is giving a ① ..... at home. He has ② ..... some of his friends. The party will be at five o'clock in the afternoon. Hany is giving this party because of his ③ ..... . He has got high ④ ..... and his parents are very happy.

5 Write an email of about (80-90) words:

to your uncle Fareed who is working in New York telling him about a problem you have at school and asking for his advice. Your name is Yossif and your email address is : yossif@prepschool.com

Your uncle's email address is : fareed@gmail.com

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- الاسئلة القادمة تساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

Answer these questions to help you write the email.

1- What's the problem you are facing?

2- What does this problem cause?

3- Ask your uncle for advice.

- اجابة الاسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

- I'm having a bit of trouble in .....

- It's making it hard to .....

- Do you have any advice on .....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 36- 39

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

geocache (n)	صندوق مخبأ	treasure hunt (n)	البحث عن الكنز
geocacher (n)	الباحث عن مخبأ	hometown (n)	مسقط الراس/البلد الاصلى
geocaching (n)	العثور على المخبأ	challenge (n)	تحدي
clue (n)	مفتاح لحل لغز	tips (n)	نصائح
coordinates (n)	الإحداثيات	included (adj)	مشمول/متضمن/مندمج
geeky (adj)	مهووس/ غريب الأطوار	classmate (n)	زميل في الفصل
logbook (n)	سجل الملاحظات	miss (ed)	يفتقد

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

relaxing (adj)	مريح	hobby (n)	هواية
app (n)	تطبيق	outdoor (adj)	خارجى
post (n)	منشور	theme (n)	موضوع
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغداء	through (prep)	عبر/من خلال
together (adv)	معا	sort / type (n)	نوع
shell (n)	صدفة	practice (d)	يتمرن
own (adj)	ملك/خاص	suggest (ed)	يقترح
math (n)	رياضيات	add (ed)	يضيف
extra (adj)	اضافي	mind (ed)	يمانع
hidden (adj)	مخبئ/مخفي	summarize (d)	يلخص
normal (adj)	عادي/طبيعي	solve (d)	يحل
art club (n)	نادي الرسم	notice (d)	يلاحظ
forum post (n)	منشور فى منتدى	move to (d)	ينتقل إلى/يعزل

Expressions & Prepositions

worried that	قلق أن	decide on	يحدد/يختار
that sounds fun	يبدو ممتعا	all over	في جميع إنحاء
feel included	يشعر بالالفة/يشعر أنه مندمج	pairs of	أزواج من
count me in	اعتبرني مشاركا	work out	يحسب/يحل
share ideas	يتشارك الأفكار	come over	يزور
so that	لكي	Message me!	راسلني/ابعث لي
have fun	يستمتع	set up	ينشئ

Definitions

geocache	صندوق مخبأ	a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find
clues	مفاتيح حل/أدلة	information that helps you solve a problem or find something
coordinates	إحداثيات	Pairs of numbers used to find the location of something
geeky	مهووس/غريب الأطوار	not cool, very interested in a particular thing
logbook	سجل الملاحظات	a written record of events
treasure hunt	البحث عن الكنز	a game which you play to find something that has been hidden

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
normal عادي	ordinary	abnormal / unusual غير معتاد
interesting شيق	exciting	boring ممل
relaxing مريح	comfortable	tiring متعب

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
geo-	تعطي معنى متعلق بالأرض	geocaching
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	normal
-ing	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	interesting

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
tell	يخبر	told	told
find	يجد	found	found
lead	يقود	led	led
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
set	ينشئ	set	set

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 decide to / decide on

- **decide to + inf.** يقرر أن

Ex. We decided to visit the zoo next Friday.

- **decide on + noun** يحدد / يختار

Ex. They decided on a day for the wedding.

2 beach / shore / coast

- **beach** شاطئ/بلاج المنطقة الرملية

Ex. The children like to play on the beach in Alexandria.

- **shore** شاطئ/مكان المنازل و الطرق

Ex. My uncle has a house on the shore in Alexandria.

- **coast** الساحل/للوصف الجغرافي

Ex. Alexandria lies on the north coast of Egypt.

3 miss / lose

- **miss** يفقد (شيء معنوي)/يفتقد

Ex. Get up early not to miss the train.

Ex. My father works abroad. I miss him so much.

- **lose** يفقد (شيء مادي)/يخسر

Ex. Ali lost his pen at school.

Ex. They train hard so as not to lose the match.

4 quite / quiet

- **quite** تماما/إلى حد ما

Ex. I think I can draw cats and rabbits quite well!

- **quiet** هادئ

Ex. Be quiet. The baby is sleeping.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a nice car. The engine's really _____
   a. quiet b. quite c. quietly d. noisy
2. He plays the piano _____ well.
   a. quiet b. quite c. quietly d. noisy
3. Omar _____ the bus and had to wait for the next one.
   a. lost b. drove c. missed d. took
4. I like to sit on the _____ on hot days.
   a. beach b. shore c. land d. coast
5. We must decide _____ one goal to achieve.
   a. for b. to c. on d. at

Reading

SB Page (36)

An Unusual Hobby

استمع إلى النصوص

When Nermine's family move to[1] Oxford for her dad's job, she misses[2] her hometown[3], Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching[4], to explore[5] the city.



Geocaching is a special sort[6] of outdoor treasure hunt[7]. Just like a normal[8] treasure hunt, you solve clues[9] to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app[10] on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates[11], which are pairs of[12] numbers. These help you find the treasure - the geocache[13], a box with small, interesting things in it.

In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching[14] with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates[15] might think geocaching is geeky[16], so she doesn't tell them about it.

Then, one lunchtime, Nermine is looking at a new challenge[17] on her phone when two girls from her class, Sarah and Ella, come over. "What's that game?" asks Sarah.

Nermine explains. "There are millions of geocaches all over[18] the world. When you find one, you don't take the treasure. You write your name in a logbook[19] to tell other geocachers[20] that you found it, then you put it back. If you want, you can put something new into the geocache for other people to find."

"That sounds fun[21]!"says Ella. "Can we play, too?

"Sure! But this is a really difficult one."

"That's okay. Three heads are better than one, so maybe we will find the treasure more quickly together!" Their classmates notice[22] that Nermine, Sarah, and Ella are spending all their lunchtimes together. They ask questions and soon there are ten of them geocaching.

When they find the geocache, they discuss[23] what to add to it. They decide on[24] a school chair and a shell[25] from the beach in Alexandria.

One day, Nermine, Sarah, and Ella decide to make their own geocache. They tell their math teacher. She thinks their idea is good and says that the geocache could be a challenge for the rest[26] of the class.

The clues lead[27] the class all over the school. It's hard work and they have to work together. Nermine feels included[28] and happy. Finally, they work out the coordinates and find the geocache. They all have such a good time that they don't even mind[29] that the treasure is extra[30] math homework!

١. يعزل/ينتقل الى
٢. تفتقد
٣. مسقط الرأس
٤. البحث عن المخبأ
٥. يستكشف
٦. نوع
٧. البحث عن الكنز
٨. عادي
٩. مفاتيح الحل
١٠. تطبيق
١١. الاح داثيات
١٢. أزواج من
١٣. صندوق مخبأ
١٤. لعبة العثور على المخبأ
١٥. زملاء
١٦. غريبة
١٧. تحدي
١٨. في جميع انحاء
١٩. سجل الملاحظات
٢٠. الباحثين عن الكنز
٢١. يبدو ممتعا
٢٢. يلاحظون
٢٣. يناقشون
٢٤. يحددون
٢٥. صدفة
٢٦. باقي
٢٧. تقود
٢٨. تشعر بالألفة
٢٩. يمانع
٣٠. اضافي

Answer the following questions:

1- What is the main idea of the second paragraph?

2- In geocaching, you solve ..... to find something interesting.

a. clues b. treasures c. coordinates d. boxes

3- The math teacher thinks the idea is .....

a. bad b. dangerous c. good d. safe

Answers:

1- The main idea of the passage is to introduce geocaching as a type of outdoor treasure hunt that involves using a mobile app to find hidden geocaches based on coordinates.

2- a. clues 3- c. good

SB Page (38)



Nabila's forum post

Hi everyone! I love coloring and painting, and I really enjoy going to art club(1) after school. I also practice(2) most days at home. It's so relaxing(3). My favorite thing to draw is animals. I think I can draw cats, dogs, and rabbits quite well! Here's a drawing(4) I did of my cat last week. Do you like art, too? I would like to meet other people who share(5) my hobby(6) so that we can set up(7) a group to draw and paint together(9). We could share ideas, give each other tips(8) to improve(10) our work, and have fun! Message me(11).

١. نادي الرسم
٢. يمارس
٣. مريح
٤. رسمة/لوحة
٥. يشارك
٦. هواية
٧. ينشئ
٨. معًا
٩. نصائح
١٠. يحسن
١١. راسلني

---

comments

Replies to Nabila's post



Alex11:
Cool drawing! I love drawing animals, too. Let's share some pictures!



Hetty_123
Great idea! Count me in.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Lamia and Karma are talking about hobbies

Lamia : Hi, Karma! Do you have any hobbies?
Karma : ❶ .....
Lamia : ❷ .....?
Karma : I like geocaching.
Lamia : ❸ .....?
Karma : It is a game which you play to find something hidden.
Lamia : It is a strange hobby, isn't it ?
Karma : ❹ ..... What about you?
Lamia : ❺ .....
Karma : Reading is a good hobby.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. _____ is a type of outdoor treasure hunt. SB
   a. Geography b. Geocaching c. Photography d. Swimming
2. Nermine suggests they _____ their own geocache challenge. SB
   a. sit b. set c. sell d. smell
3. The math teacher thinks _____ their own geocache is a good idea. SB
   a. sending b. recording c. working d. making
4. Geocaching is a fun outdoor _____ for all ages. SB
   a. tip b. record c. clue d. activity
5. Ola decided to return to her _____ after she finished university. SB
   a. hometown b. airport c. shell d. idea
6. Completing the puzzle was quite a _____. It was difficult. SB
   a. theme b. record c. message d. challenge

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. You should _____ clues to find a geocache.
   a. solve b. ask c. make d. do
8. Everyone should keep a _____ of the activities he does.
   a. tip b. record c. clue d. string
9. My _____ refused to lend me his pencil and ruler at school yesterday.
   a. father b. classmate c. baby d. uncle

10. She entered the ..... into her GPS device to find the location of the company.
    a. tips b. records c. shares d. coordinates
11. They found a hidden ..... in the woods.
    a. geocache b. hobby c. job d. project
12. The final ..... led them to the treasure.
    a. tip b. record c. clue d. string
13. Some people may consider geocaching to be a ..... hobby because it is a strange hobby.
    a. geeky b. calm c. noisy d. happy
14. Sixteen complaints were recorded in the ..... on the same day.
    a. logbook b. dictionary c. guidebook d. string
15. The best way to ..... the countryside is on foot.
    a. organize b. explore c. record d. present
16. They shared useful ..... for successful geocaching adventures.
    a. tips b. hobbies c. shells d. strings
17. The ..... music helped Aliaa to calm down.
    a. tiring b. relaxing c. dangerous d. easy
18. She downloaded a new ..... to learn new English words.
    a. app b. shell c. clue d. pot
19. Can you ..... the main points of the lesson?
    a. miss b. challenge c. summarize d. hunt
20. The ..... treasure was finally discovered.
    a. relaxed b. surprised c. hidden d. included
21. The match was interesting. The synonym of interesting is .....
    a. exciting b. worrying c. boring d. tiring
22. The suffix ..... changes the noun interest into an adjective.
    a. -al b. -ing c. -ion d. -ness

Expressions & prepositions

23. They finally decided ..... a date for the wedding.
    a. in b. at c. on d. for
24. My friends are so friendly so I feel ..... with them.
    a. consisted b. included c. excluded d. sad
25. This student is clever, he can work ..... any math problem.
    a. in b. out c. of d. out

Writing

1- Writing a forum post

- **To write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity, you can use these expressions:**

• لكتابة منشور في المنتدى حول نشاط وقت الفراغ المفضل لديك، أجب عن هذه الأسئلة

1- What is your favorite free-time activity? 2- Why do you enjoy it?

3- Why are you writing? 4- Which after-school club activity do you go to?

5- What can you do well?

يمكنك استخدام هذه التعبيرات في الكتابة

• I really enjoy ... • I can . .. quite well. • I would like to • I love

Exercise: Write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity.

Hey everyone,
I'm always looking for ways to relax and get out of stress .I love spending my free time playing video games! It's a great way to relax and have fun. I especially enjoy playing games with my friends online. We can chat while we play and compete against each other. It's really exciting!
What's your favorite free-time activity?

2- Punctuation

• من المهم استخدام علامات الترقيم بشكل صحيح لأنها تسهل عملية القراءة

• من أكثر علامات الترقيم استخداما :

1- Period: النقطة - تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية :

- My favorite thing to draw is animals.

2- Question mark: علامة الاستفهام - تستخدم في نهاية السؤال:

- Do you like art?

3- comma: الفاصلة - تستخدم بين الكلمات في القوائم و بعد **Yes - No**:

- Aya bought rice, oil, sugar and tea.
- Yes, I like art.

4- Exclamation mark (!): علامة التعجب - تستخدم للتعبير عن الدهشة

- Hi everyone! - That's fun

Exercise: Punctuate the following

Nice to meet you Nabila I like your idea I draw and paint a lot too but sometimes I want to practice and share my pictures with other people Also I have an idea for the group We could have a different theme every month Everyone in the group draws or paints a picture on that theme We can then share them at the end of the month What do you think

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Khalid and Basel are talking about doing some activities.

Khalid : Did you do your English homework?

Basel : ① .....

Khalid : ② .....?

Basel : I did it last night.

Khalid : ③ .....?

Basel : Sure, I like drawing.

Khalid : What do you like to draw?

Basel : ④ .....What about you?

Khalid : For me, I like reading a lot.

Basel : ⑤ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. His _____ on social media got a lot of attention.
   a. tip b. post c. clue d. string
2. She _____ her train by just a few minutes.
   a. missed b. lost c. had d. traveled
3. They decided to _____ the island after having lunch.
   a. swim b. travel c. record d. explore
4. He needed to _____ the hard question to finish the exam.
   a. ask b. solve c. send d. count
5. The beach was covered in beautiful _____
   a. sharks b. fish c. shells d. apps
6. The teacher agreed to give us _____ time to finish the difficult homework.
   a. hard b. extra c. hidden d. easy
7. They walked _____ the forest hand in hand.
   a. from b. through c. about d. over
8. They _____ the latest book they had read.
   a. minded b. exercised c. hunted d. discussed

9. She _____ the small details in the painting.

a. noticed b. missed c. read d. hunted

10. She has her _____ style of painting that is really amazing.

a. usual b. hidden c. own d. normal

11. It's _____ to feel tired after such a long trip.

a. lazy b. normal c. beautiful d. heavy

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Omar and his friend Malek were going for a walk, to enjoy the fresh air. They came near an old house where nobody lived. It was dark inside. The boys were afraid. Omar had a torch in his hand and they walked down the steps until they came to a small room. The boys saw a big hole near the wall. **There**, they found a blue jacket. Under it there was a big brown bag. They carried the bag and the jacket up the steps quickly. They decided to go to the police station where the bag was opened. To their surprise, they saw two million dollars. The dollars were stolen from a bank a week before. The blue jacket led to the thieves who were caught by the police. The boys were rewarded and the money was returned to the bank.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What did the police find inside the bag?

_____

2. Why were the boys rewarded?

_____

3. What does the underlined word "There," refer to?

_____

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. _____ people lived in the old house.

a. A lot of b. Few c. Many d. No

5. The boys went for a walk _____

a. at night b. in the afternoon

c. in the morning d. in the evening

6. The big bag was put in a _____

a. jacket b. hole c. wall d. bank

4 Read and complete:

box - challenge - classmates - geeky - hobby

Nermine explores her new city through her favorite ① ....., geocaching. She doesn't want to tell her new ② ..... about it. What if they think it's ③ .....? Nermine's teacher says it can be a ④ ..... for the class. They all work together to find the geocache. It's a lot of fun.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. yes i like reading football and geocaching ----------

2. ameera got the full mark thats amazing ----------

6 Write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- الجمل القادمة تساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

Answer these questions to help you write the post.

1-How do you like spending your free time?

2- Where do enjoy walking.....

3- What else do you like to do?

- اجابة الاسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

- I love spending my free time exploring .....

- I especially enjoy walking .....

- I also like to .....

Review on Unit 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	walk in nature	يمشي في الطبيعة
hobby (n)	هواية	help in community	يساعد في المجتمع
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد	"to do" list	قائمة المهام
write a journal	يدون مذكرات	shopping mall (n)	سوق تجاري
evening classes	دروس مسائية	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
tennis court (n)	ملعب تنس	captain (n)	قائد الفريق/كابتن
organize (d)	ينظم	focus (ed)	يركز
bazaar (n)	سوق	help in community	يساعد في المجتمع
present (v)	يقدم	jewelery (n)	مجوهرات
stall (n)	كشك/محل صغير	bracelet (n)	أسورة
homemade (adj)	صناعة منزلية	beads (n)	الخرز
break (n)	استراحة/فسحة	ingredients (n)	مقادير/مكونات
beads (n)	خرز	extra (adj)	إضافي
string (n)	خيط	school principal (n)	مدير مدرسة
geocache (n)	صندوق مخبأ	advice (n)	نصيحة
geocacher (n)	الباحث عن مخبأ	treasure hunt (n)	البحث عن الكنز
geocaching (n)	العثور على المخبأ	hometown (n)	مسقط الراس/البلد الاصلي
clue (n)	مفتاح لحل لغز	miss (ed)	يفتقد
coordinates (n)	الإحداثيات	challenge (n)	تحدي
geeky (n)	مهووس/غريب الأطوار	tips (n)	نصائح
logbook (n)	سجل الملاحظات	included (adj)	مشمول/متضمن/مندمج
take regular exercises	يتدرب بانتظام	classmate (n)	زميل في الفصل



Language قواعد لغوية

1- The present continuous tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

I	→ am	+ V + ing
He - she - it الاسم المفرد	→ is	
They - we - you الاسم الجمع	→ are	

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام) .

Ex. She is cleaning the house now.

Ex. Look! He is singing.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

- now (الآن)
- at the present time (في الوقت الحاضر)
- Listen (استمع)
- Look! (انظر)
- at the moment (في هذة اللحظة)

Negative النفى

- عند نفى زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بعد am - is - are.

Ex. He is not playing football now. النفي

Ex. They are not watching TV now. النفي

Question السؤال

- وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم am - is - are على الفاعل.

Ex. Is he playing football?

- وعند عمل سؤال بأداة استفهام نستخدم القاعدة الآتية:

→ (أداة الاستفهام) + am - is - are + الفاعل + الفعل + تكملة الجملة + ?

Ex. What is he doing?

- Where is Ali eating?

2- Subject and object pronouns

- نستخدم ضمائر الفاعل عندما نتحدث عن من قام بالفعل.
- نستخدم ضمائر المفعول عندما نتحدث عن من يتلقى الفعل (من وقع عليه الفعل).

Subject	I	he	she	it	we	you	they
Object	me	him	her	it	us	you	them

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات الصفحة ورسائل البريد الالكتروني

Lessons 1 & 2

To : Nader@gmail.com

From : pupil@prepschool.com

Subject : What do you like to do?

Hey Nader,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How're you and your family? I've been playing a lot of football lately, but I also enjoy reading and taking walks in nature. Sometimes I write in my journal about it! Do you like any of those things? I'd love to hear what you're doing besides studying.

Write soon and tell me your news

Yours, Ali

Lessons 3 & 4

To : fareed@gmail.com

From : yossif@prepschool.com

Subject : Need some help with Math, Uncle Fareed!

Hi Uncle Fareed,

Hope you're doing well in New York! I'm writing because I'm having a problem in math class. I can't understand some of the lessons, although I try to focus with the teacher's explanations.

It's making it hard to study for tests, although I spend a lot of time working on problems.

Do you have any advice on how to get better at math? Maybe there were some tricks you used in school?

Yours, Yossif

Lessons 5 & 6

My Favorite Free-Time Activity

I love spending my free time exploring nature. It's a great way to relax and appreciate the beauty of the world around me. I enjoy walking in the mountains and camping in the forest. There's something so peaceful and calming about nature.

I also like to go fishing and bird watching. It's a great way to learn about different species and know more about life on Earth.

What's your favorite free-time activity?

Al-Azhar Test

I just wanted to share something cool! I recently got into geocaching ! It's so interesting learning about it. If you've always dreamed of finding buried treasure, you should definitely give geocaching a try. This is an outdoor treasure-hunting game where you can use GPS to search for hidden containers called "geocaches."

General exercises on Unit 3

I love spending my free time playing sports. It's a great way to stay active and healthy. I enjoy playing football and basketball. They're both interesting sports that I find really fun. Also, I love exploring new places and trying new things. I enjoy visiting museums and art galleries, learning about different cultures and interesting places. Sometimes, I like to go hiking or camping in the mountains, or exploring nearby forests. I also enjoy cooking and baking. I like experimenting with different recipes.

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Where did Raneem spend her holiday?
   a. in Paris b. In Rome c. In Italy d. In Madrid
2. How was the food?
   a. Nasty b. Bad c. Expired d. Delicious
3. What is Aswan famous for?
   a. The Eiffel Tower b. The Pyramids c. The High Dam d. The Sphinx
4. What did Raneem buy for Riham?
   a. A T-shirt b. A postcard c. A camel d. Nothing

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Doha and Malak are talking about their school library.

Doha : Is there a library in your school?

Malak : ① _____

Doha : ② _____?

Malak : It's on the third floor.

Doha : ③ _____?

Malak : I go there twice a week.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They found a hidden _____ in the woods.
   a. downtown b. geocache c. hometown d. hobby
2. She has some beads and _____ She can make a bracelet.
   a. ingredients b. tips c. cupcakes d. string
3. You came first in the exam. That's _____
   a. cold b. cool c. cache d. bad
4. Riham invited _____ to her birthday party.
   a. we b. us c. their d. our
5. Ahmed _____ taking a course to improve his English .
   a. am b. is c. are d. has

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

My name is Baher. I'm from Port Said. I want to be a doctor so I always work hard at school. My favorite subjects are Science and English. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teachers are very good. I like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from India! My favorite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Baher from? ----------
2. What subjects is Baher interested in? ----------
3. What is Baher's goal? ----------

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Baher didn't _____ in England last year?
   a. swim in a river b. meet new friends
   c. practise his English d. cycle to school
5. Baher has a friend from _____
   a. North America b. Asia c. Europe d. Africa

5 Rearrange the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. to learn - I - take - new - skills - evening - classes. ----------
2. my mother - recipes - from - I - love - to - learn. ----------
3. painting - and - I - love - coloring. ----------
4. to draw - My - favorite - thing - is - animals. ----------

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your unusual hobby"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

General Exercises on Unit 3

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Malek has got _____ brothers.
   a. two b. three c. four d. no
2. Malek's father is a / an _____
   a. pilot b. engineer c. workman d. businessman
3. Malek and his family live a _____ life.
   a. sad b. stressful c. troubling d. happy
4. Malek's mother works in a / an _____
   a. bank b. school c. company d. office

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salma is talking to Gihad about last summer vacation

Salma : Hello, Gihad. ① ----------?

Gihad : Hello, Salma. I went to Hurghada last summer.

Salma : Who did you go with?

Gihad : ② ----------

Salma : ③ ----------?

Gihad : Yes, Hurghada is a very beautiful city.

Salma : Did you enjoy your visit to Hurghada?

Gihad : ④ ----------

Salma : ⑤ ----------?

Gihad : We stayed in a large hotel there .

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

primary - brothers - prep - reading - years

Omar goes to Tanta ① _____ school for boys. He is thirteen ② _____ old . He walks to school every day. His father is a teacher, but her mother is a nurse . Omar has got two ③ _____ called Ahmed and Adel . Omar's favorite food is rice . He enjoys watching TV every night. He likes ④ _____ funny stories.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mona lives with her family in Al- Qanater. She is in Khalid Ibn El-Waleed Prep school. Mona always gets high marks in all subjects. Her father is a doctor in Al- Qanater Hospital. Her mother is a housewife. She cleans the house .She always stays in the kitchen all day. She cooks the food for her family and washes the dishes. Mona has got one brother and one sister. Her brother is twenty-nine years old. He is a doctor in the same hospital with his father.

While the father was going home one evening , he saw a young boy crying by the side of the road. The young boy was very ill. The doctor was very kind. **He** took the young boy to hospital. The young boy was saved and thanked him. Mona's sister is a secretary. She works in an office. She is good at English.

A. Answer the following questions:

1- Why is Mona a good student? .....

2- Where was the young boy crying? .....

3- What does a doctor do? .....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Mona's mother is a _____

a. teacher b. doctor c. housewife d. nurse

5- Her brother works in a _____

a. factory b. hospital c. school d. company

6- The underlined word "He" refers to Mona's _____

a. father b. uncle c. mother d. brother

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should take courses to _____ new skills.

a. teach b. organize c. learn d. think

2. Drawing is a good way to _____ and express yourself.

a. hurry b. relax c. set d. plan

3. Pilots use _____ to fly planes and to know locations of places.

a. tips b. beads c. cupcakes d. coordinates

4. My aunt gave me a new _____ for making rice pudding.

a. recipe b. advice c. journal d. table

5. They usually go _____ walks in nature.

a. at b. to c. for d. about

6. Yara isn't here right now. She ..... her aunt at hospital.
   a. visit b. is visiting c. visiting d. was visited
7. Is Riham going to invite ..... to your party?
   a. I b. me c. my d. we
8. What ..... Mr. Aziz doing at the moment?
   a. are b. does c. is d. has
9. Rahma ..... sport nowadays. She wants to keep fit.
   a. are doing b. does c. is doing d. has done
10. Waleed and Emad aren't here. Tell ..... to come tomorrow.
    a. they b. their c. theirs d. them

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She is ..... (write) a story now.
2. Ali can help ..... (she) with the homework.
3. Look ! A car ..... (comes) quickly.
4. Mr. and Mrs. Kamal are ..... (built) a new house these days.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. one day Nermine Sarah and Ella decided to make their own geocache

---

2. no i don t like orange juice

E Writing

8 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

How you spend your free time

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

walk (n)	تمشية	position (n)	موقع ، موقف
forest (n)	غابة	a couple of	زوج من
good at (n) + (v-ing)	جيد فى	face to face	وجهًا لوجه
local community	مجتمع محلي	relatives (n)	أقارب
cooking (n)	الطبخ	get in touch with (v)	يتواصل مع
active (adj)	نشيط	improve (v)	يتحسن
sports center	مركز رياضي	compete (v)	يتنافس
indoor (adj)	داخلى	grow (v) grew - grown	يزرع - ينمو
do karate	يمارس الكاراتية	BTW → By the way	على فكرة/بالمناسبة
chess (n)	شطرنج	TTYL → Talk to you later	اتحدث معك لاحقًا
tournament (n)	بطولة/دورى	summer camp	معسكر صيفى
get second place	يحصل على المركز الثاني	Well done!	احسنت
against (prep)	ضد		

Definitions

huge	ضخم	very big
indoor	داخل	inside a building
volunteer	يتطوع	do something without being paid.
compete	يتنافس	take part in a competition.
tournament	دورة رياضية	a sports competition.
improving	يتحسن	getting better
journal	يوميات	a written record of what you do,
learning	التعلم	studying something to understand it better.

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

Always / usually and present continuous:

- We can use the present continuous with always to emphasise a habit (nice or annoying)

Ex. I love being active, so I'm always doing something. (nice habit) SB 40

Ex. When I'm not at school, I'm usually playing chess. (unusual habit) SB 40

Reading

SB Page (40)

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

A Ellie, Sweden



I live next to a huge forest, so I like to go on long walks in nature. I also volunteer some of my time at the local community garden: I help grow vegetables that later go into meals at the community kitchen. Last summer I also volunteered at the kitchen, but I'm not good at cooking!

B Josh, UK



I love being active, so I'm always doing something. I go to the sports center nearly every day. I run and swim there. They have a great indoor swimming pool. I also do karate three times a week, but I'm still learning. I'm not very good yet, but maybe one day I'll compete.

C Luca, Italy



When I'm not at school, I'm usually playing chess (sometimes, at school too!). There's a tournament next month, so I'm training for that right now. In my last one, it was really close: I got second place! I play a lot of games, usually against the computer, but I also spend a lot of time learning about different positions.

D Nadia, Egypt



I feel great when I'm helping others. My mom's a teacher and I help her teach adults to read and write. It's great to see them improving day by day. When I'm not doing that, I like writing about myself. I keep a journal about my life, and I also like to write stories. I often use AI to give me ideas about what to write.

Review A

Reading

SB Page (43)

استمع إلى النص

Hi! How's everything? Great(1) to know you won the table tennis tournament(2). Well done! I'm so proud of you!(3) I would like to play table tennis better. Maybe(4) you can teach me one day? BTW(5), did you have a good first week back at school? Mine was OK. It was good to see everyone again. There are a couple of(6) new students who seem nice.

I do miss the summer vacation,(7) though. I had a great time! Did I tell you that I volunteered(8) at a summer camp(9) for children who can't see? I learned so many skills(10) and met fantastic people.

I really enjoy helping other people, and I think I can do it quite well. I'm reading my summer journal(11) again now to remember everything I did. What was your summer like?

TTYL(12)

Shahd

١. عظيم
٢. دوري
٣. فخور بك
٤. ربما
٥. على فكرة
٦. زوج من
٧. الاجازة الصيفية
٨. يتطوع
٩. معسكر
١٠. مهارات
١١. مذكرات
١٢. ساتحدث معك لاحقا

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Where did Shahd volunteer during her summer holiday?
2. Infer from the passage how was Shahd's first week back at school?
3. Shahd was _____ to meet her classmates again.

a. happy b. sad c. nervous d. proud

Answers:

1. She volunteered in a summer camp for children who can't see.
2. It was OK. (good)
3. a. happy

Listening

SB Page (41)

استمع إلى النص

A dialog between Sarah and Mariam about a birthday party

Mariam : Hi, Sarah. I saw some photos of you on social media yesterday. You were at a party(1) . It looked fun!

Sarah : Thanks, Mariam. Yes, I had a great time! It was my grandmother's 70th birthday party, and we all wanted it to be special,(2) so we spent weeks preparing(3). It was hard because there was a lot to do and we wanted it to be a surprise.(4)

Mariam : Oh, so she didn't know about the party.

Sarah : No, she didn't. Mom organized(5) everything, but we all helped. My sister Nadia got in touch(6) with all the family members(7) on social media. I made cake, and Dad took the photos on the day.

Mariam : And how was the big day ?

Sarah : Perfect!(8) My uncle has a café in town, so we had the party there. My grandfather took my grandmother for a walk and said, "Why don't we stop for a coffee at the café?". When they went in, we were all there.

Mariam : That's great! And did you know everyone there ?

Sarah : No, I met lots of new relatives(9). It was also good to see cousins(10) that I usually just message online. It's much better to chat face-to-face, isn't it?

Mariam : True!

١. حفله
٢. مميز
٣. يعد/يجهز
٤. مفاجاة
٥. نظمت
٦. كانت على اتصال
٧. أعضاء
٨. ممتاز
٩. أقارب
١٠. أبناء العم

Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 4 Digital life



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Information about inventions for a sustainable future; An article; Scammed!:a short story.

Writing:

A blog post about staying safe online: taking part in a technology competition.

Listening:

Understand a dialog about a new app.

Speaking:

Talk about staying safe online: Discuss which devices are important and why.

Language:

Imperatives for instructions; The zero conditional.

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 44-46

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

ATM (n)	ماكينة الصراف الآلى	search engine (n)	محرك البحث
green (adj)	صديق للبيئة	devices (n)	أجهزة
sustainable (adj)	مستدام	run (v)	يدير
advertisement (n)	إعلان	tap (ped)	ينقر
solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
battery (n)	بطارية	insert (ed)	يُدخِل - يُدرج
social media (n)	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	press (ed)	يضغط على
fitness (n)	اللياقة البدنية	click (ed)	يضغط على زرار

Inventions for a sustainable future

- Tree-planting projects.	مشاريع زراعة الأشجار
- Solar-powered airplanes.	طائرات تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية
- Plant-based batteries.	بطاريات نباتية (بها مكونات عضوية)
- Ocean clean-up projects.	مشاريع تنظيف المحيطات
- EcoATM	ماكينة الصراف الآلى البيئية (صديقة البيئة)

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	camera icon (n)	رمز الكاميرا
electricity (n)	كهرباء	color bar (n)	شريط الألوان
planet (n)	كوكب	eraser (n)	ممحاة
invention (n)	اختراع	folder (n)	مجلد
online (adv)	عبر الانترنت	sign (n)	لافتة
Eco-friendly (adj)	ملائمة للبيئة	clean power (n)	طاقة نظيفة
AppErture (n)	تطبيق لتعديل الصور	scientist (n)	عالم
emojis (n)	رموز تعبيرية	infographic (n)	رسم بيانى

title (n)	عنوان (مقال - كتاب)	delete (d)	يحذف
ocean (n)	محيط	scroll (ed)	يمرر على شاشة التليفون
address book (n)	دفتر العناوين	install (ed)	يثبت / يركب
effects (n)	مؤثرات	drag (ged)	يجر / يسحب
electric cars (n)	سيارات تعمل بالكهرباء	develop (ed)	يطور
produce (d)	ينتج	face (d)	يواجه

Expressions & Prepositions

go online	يتصل بالأنترنت	esay-to-read	سهلة القراءة
keep the money	يحفظ المال	take care of = look after	يعتنى بـ
take (sth) back	يُعيد / يُرجع	take (money) out	يسحب / يُخرج المال
take away	يُزيل	put (money) into	يُودع / يضع المال
take a photo	يلتقط صورة	share.... with	يشارك مع
point the camera	وجهه الكاميرا	switch on	يُشغِل
"Save" folder	مجلد الحفظ	click on	يضغط على
full of	مملؤ بـ	thanks for + (v-ing)	شكرًا من اجل
look like	تبدو / تشبه	on the right / left of	على يمين / يسار
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	put down	يضع / يترك من يده
		drag.....to	يسحب.....إلى

*ATM is the abbreviation for automated / automatic teller machine.
*Digital life is the opposite of "Real life".

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym	المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
exciting	مثير	interesting		boring	ممل
traditional	تقليدى	classical		new / modern	حديث
easy	سهل	simple		hard	صعب
show	يعرض	display		hide	يخبئ
remember	يتذكر	recall		forget	ينسى
delete	يحذف	remove		insert	يدخل/يدرج

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
eco-	مرتبط بالبيئة	EcoATM
re-	تعطى معنى التكرار	recycle
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	invention
-ing	تحول الفعل الى اسم	recycling
-able	تحول الفعل الى صفة	sustainable

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
show	يعرض	showed	shown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
send	يرسل	sent	sent
fly	يطير	flew	flown
run	يدير	ran	run

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 tap / click

- **tap** (v.) يلمس برفق "على سطح الشاشة"

Ex. Eman tapped on her mobile screen to make a call.

- **click** (v) يضغط "على زر فارة أو لوحة مفاتيح"

Ex. Ali clicked on the camera icon to open it.

2 verb patterns

- **stop + -ing = (finish)**

Ex. Don't stop pressing.

- **help + (object) + inf / or to + inf**

Ex. We need new ways to help us take/ to take care of our planet.

- **show/ tell + object + how to + inf**

Ex. I can show you how to use it.

Ex. Tell me how to use the video call app.

3 electricity / electric / electronic

- **electricity (n) a form of energy** الكهرباء

Ex. These panels make electricity using the sun.

- **electric (adj.)** كهربى
- أشياء تعمل بواسطة الكهرباء (الأجهزة/الأدوات).

Ex. Electric cars are good for the environment.

- **electronic (adj.)** اليكترونى (الأجهزة المصممة للعمل بالتيار الكهربى)

Ex. Electronic devices.

Ex. An electronic calculator.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... the OK button to start.
   a. Tap b. Beark c. Sit d. Click
2. Listen to me and stop ..... noise.
   a. making b. makes c. to make d. made
3. We need to buy an ..... fan.
   a. electricity b. electric c. electronic d. electrical
4. My mom always helps me ..... my homework.
   a. doing b. to doing c. do d. did
5. Can you show me how ..... this machine?
   a. start b. to start c. to starting d. starts

Reading

SB Page (45)

Inventions for a sustainable future

استمع إلى النصوص

Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of[1] our planet[2] and fix some of the problems it faces[3]. Here are some exciting new inventions which will help us.



Tree-planting projects

When we go online, we see online advertisements[4]. Some search engines[5] give the money they get from advertisements to help tree-planting projects[6] around the world.



Solar- powered airplanes

Most airplanes[7] aren't good for our planet. Solar-powered[8] airplanes fly using power[9] that comes from solar panels[10]. It is very clean power. The planes can fly around the world, day or night. It's an exciting new invention[11] for the future!



EcoATMs

We use regular[12] ATMs[13] to take money out or put money into our banks. Eco-friendly[14] ATMs help us recycle[15] old electronic devices[16]. When you put your old device in it, the machine tells you how much money you can have for it. You can keep the money or give it to a charity[17]!



Plant-based batteries

Scientists are developing batteries[18] that work using material[19] from plants. The way these batteries are made is better for the environment than traditional[20] batteries. In the future, they could even produce[21] enough power to run electric cars[22]!

Ocean clean-up projects

The world's oceans[23] are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Ocean clean-up project[24] collect rubbish[25] in the water, then ships take it back to land for recycling.



١. يهتم بـ
٢. كوكب
٣. يواجه
٤. اعلانات
٥. محركات البحث
٦. ٧-مشروعات زراعة الاشجار
٧. طائرات
٨. التى تسير بالطاقة الشمسية
٩. طاقة
١٠. ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
١١. اختراع
١٢. عادية
١٣. ماكينات الصرف الآلية
١٤. صديقة للبيئة
١٥. يعيد تدوير
١٦. أجهزة الكترونية
١٧. جمعية خيرية
١٨. بطاريات
١٩. مادة
٢٠. قديمة
٢١. تنتج
٢٢. السيارات الكهربائية
٢٣. محيطات
٢٤. مشروعات تنظيف
٢٥. القمامة

Listening

SB Page (46)

SB Page (46)

Amir : Hi, Selim. Thanks for telling me about APPeErture(1) I'm really excited!.

Selim : No problem! I can show you how to use it if you want.Have you got the app on your phone yet?

Amir : Yes, I have! I want to try it now! Show me how to use it!

Selim : OK. First, tap(2) the app to open it. Can you see the camera icon(3)?

Amir : Here? Yes.

Selim : Press(4) on the icon for one second and it will open your photos. "Don't stop pressing. Wait until they open. Then choose a photo you want to change(5).

Amir : Right. Here's a photo of my cat, Fluffy!

Selim : Sweet! You have a black cat... do you want to make it another color?

Amir :OK!

Selim : Open the color bar(6) and choose the color you want.



Amir : Haha! I have a purple cat! What about these effects(7)? Look! I can use the eraser(8) to take away your bed. You look like you're flying now! How can I save the photo?

Selim : Keep your finger on the photo and drag it to the "Save" folder. Now share it with me, please! I love it!

Amir : I will! Thanks, Selim.

١- تطبيق لتعديل الصور
٢- يلمس برفق
٣- رمز/أيقونة
٤- يضغط على
٥- يتغير/يغير
٦- شريط الألوان
٧- مؤثرات
٨- ممحاه

SB Page (47)

Amira : Can you tell me how to use the video call(1) app?
Samia : Sure, It's really easy. Switch on(2) your laptop!
Amira : Done! What's next?
Samia : Open the video call program. And don't forget to connect your headphones(3)!
Amira : OK.
Samia : Then click the address book(4).
Amira : Is it on right of my screen(5)?
Samia : No, It's on the left. Next find the name you want.
Amira : I found Nermine. What now?
Samia : Finally(6), just click on her name to call her! Remember(7) to open your webcam(8) too!.
Amira : Thank you Samia!

١- مكالمة فيديو
٢- شغل
٣- سماعات الأذن
٤- دليل العناوين
٥- شاشة
٦- فى النهاية
٧- تذكر
٨- كاميرا الويب

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Jana and Malak are talking about Jana's new phone.

Malak : Is this your new phone?
Jana : Yes, it is.
Malak : ❶ ..... ?
Jana : My father bought it.
Malak : ❷ ..... ?
Jana : Because I came first at the English test.
Malak : Do you know how to use it?
Jana : ❸ ..... . Can you help me?
Malak : Yes, first charge it for 3 hours.
Jana : Done! What's next?
Malak : ❹ ..... .
Jana : Thank you very much.
Malak : ❺ ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. _____ powered airplanes fly using power that comes from the sun.
   a. Wind b. Folder c. Oil d. Solar
2. I want to edit this old photo. I'll download a/an _____ to do this.
   a. device b. app c. machine d. advice
3. Use the eraser to _____ something in a photo.
   a. make b. eat c. delete d. break
4. Eco- _____ ATMs help us recycle old devices.
   a. friendly b. friend c. friends d. friendship
5. _____ the photo to the "Save" folder.
   a. Dig b. Drag c. Drug d. Draw
6. My camera didn't work well so I couldn't _____ any photos.
   a. make b. paint c. take d. play
7. Stop _____ to each other during the lesson.
   a. talking b. to talk c. talked d. talks

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. You made a mistake. Delete the word "it" and _____ "them".
   a. run b. kill c. insert d. study
9. The car won't start. The _____ needs charging.
   a. radio b. wheel c. window d. battery
10. Solar _____ make electricity using the sun.
    a. panels b. plants c. plans d. planets
11. _____ the icon on your mobile phone.
    a. Click b. Tap c. Send d. Break
12. He is a teacher. He has no idea how to _____ a restaurant.
    a. repair b. rub c. run d. walk
13. _____ sites such as Facebook and Twitter make the world a small place.
    a. Social life b. Social science
    c. Social media d. Social studies
14. If you want to sell your car, put an _____ in the local newspaper.
    a. advertisement b. picture c. news d. information

15. Is there a/an _____ near here? I need to take some money out.
a. market b. shop c. ATM d. cafe

16. The shop is full of new electronic _____.
a. wires b. voices c. advice d. devices

17. We can use _____ engines, like Google and Yahoo to search for information.
a. Research b. Sea c. Search d. Run

18. My dream is to live in a _____ city where there is no pollution.
a. white b. green c. blue d. red

19. The coach gave him a week to improve his_____.
a. fatness b. sadness c. fitness d. kindness

20. The opposite of the word "Traditional" is _____.
a. new b. old c. ancient d. classical

21. The prefix _____ means connected with the environment.
a. re- b. trans- c. miss- d. eco-

22. We can change the verb invent into a noun by adding_____.
a.-er b. -ion c. -less d. -ful

Expressions & Prepositions Exercises

23. Thanks _____ telling me about the news.
a. to b. for c. about d. in

24. She had taken all her money _____ of her account.
a. in b. about c. with d. out

25. I can use the eraser to take _____ the car behind you.
a. way b. away c. out d. into

3 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. oceans - are - full of - world's - The - plastic.

---

2. the camera - on it - click - icon - and - Find.

---

3. can not - I - my - use - phone.

---

4. you - got - on - Have - the app - your phone?

Language قواعد لغوية

The imperative الأمر

Affirmative	Negative
امر مثبت	أمر منفى
Inf + باقي الجملة	Don't + inf + باقي الجملة
Ex. Show me how to use it!	Ex. Don't stop pressing.
Ex. Tap the app to open it.	Ex. Don't stay up late.

• لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل فى الأمر المثبت. ونبدأ بـ (Never/Don't) فى الأمر المنفى + مصدر الفعل

Notes

١. يمكن استخدام Always قبل الأمر المثبت.
٢. يمكن استخدام Never بدلا من Don't في الأمر المنفي.
٣. يمكن استخدام Just / please لتقليل حدة الأمر.
٤. لا يتم استخدام الضمير You قبل الأمر إلا فى حالة تأكيد الأمر.
٥. عند إعطاء الأمر بفعل يكون نبدأ بـ Be.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. To reach the station, _____ left. SB
   a. turns b. will turn c. turning d. turn
2. _____ your phone in the library. SB
   a. Doesn't use b. Don't used c. Never use d. Use
3. Don't _____ to connect your head phones! SB
   a. forget b. forgot c. forgotten d. forgets
4. _____ the name you want to call. SB
   a. Find b. Founds c. Finding d. Finds
5. Always _____ hard.
   a. studies b. will study c. studied d. study
6. Don't _____ your rubbish here.
   a. leaves b. leave c. left d. leaving
7. Point the camera and _____ the photo!
   a. took b. takes c. take d. taking
8. Stop talking and _____ your book.
   a. opens b. opening c. opened d. open

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. **Student:** Can I leave the room?
   Teacher: No. You _____ here.
   a. stays b. stay c. will stay d. staying

10. _____ eat in the class.
    a. Not b. Always c. Never d. Do

11. Hassan, _____ eat in the class.
    a. ever b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't

12. _____ quiet, please. The baby is sleeping.
    a. Be b. Been c. Being d. Is

13. Riham, _____ the window.
    a. close b. closed c. closes d. closing

14. Malek, _____ your shoes and let's go out.
    a. put on b. to put on c. puts on d. putting on

15. If you want to answer, _____ your hand.
    a. raise b. raised c. raises d. raising

16. Please, _____ the lights before you go to bed.
    a. turn off b. turned off c. turns off d. turning off

17. Girls , _____ your bags. We are traveling tomorrow.
    a. pack b. packed c. packs d. packing

18. _____ your coat. It is getting hot.
    a. Take off b. Took off c. Takes off d. Taking off

19. Rahma, _____ the phone , please.
    a. answer b. answered c. answers d. answering

20. Never _____ rubbish in the street.
    a. threw b. throwing c. throw d. thrown

21. Don't _____ your book or the teacher will be angry with you.
    a. forgot b. forgets c. forget d. forgetting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. Don't _____ (stopped) pressing. SB
2. Always _____ (presses) on the icon to open it. SB
3. Never _____ (skips) your important lessons. SB
4. Open the color bar and _____ (chose) the color you want!

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Stop talking and ..... (listening) to me.
6. Omar, ... (study) your lessons regularly.
7. Boys, ... (Did) your best to succeed.
8. ..... (Kept) your finger on the photo and drag it.
9. Ali, ... (shows) me how to answer this question.
10. ..... (Swimming) in this dangerous area.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking Youssef.

Tourist : Can you help me, please?

Youssef : ❶ .....

Tourist : How can I go to the sports center?

Youssef : ❷ .....

Tourist : ❸ .....?

Youssef : About 50 minutes on foot.

Tourist : ❹ .....?

Youssef : Yes, you can take a taxi.

Tourist : ❺ .....

Youssef : You are welcome!

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm going to try to be a bit greener and ..... more.
   a. damage b. harm c. kill d. recycle
2. I think the ..... is dead. It has lost its power.
   a. picture b. battery c. plate d. knife
3. ..... the Enter button to start.
   a. Tap b. Click c. Break d. Hat
4. I've filled in the form, but you need to ..... your date of birth.
   a. insert b. draw c. remove d. delete
5. Don't forget to ..... your headphones. SB
   a. press b. collect c. connect d. delete

6. ..... to open your webcam too!
   a. Remembering b. Remembered c. Remembers d. Remember
7. ..... obey your parents.
   a. Never b. Don't c. Rarely d. Always
8. Don't ..... in the classroom.
   a. running b. runs c. run d. ran
9. ..... me how to use it!
   a. Show b. Shown c. Shows d. Showing
10. Go straight on then ..... right.
    a. turning b. turn c. turns d. turned



3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Inserting) the key into the car door.
2. Don't move! ..... (Waiting) here.
3. ..... (Not) eat unhealthy food.
4. ..... (Installs) this app on your phone.
5. ..... (Don't help) the poor.

4 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Future projects"

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة انشائية:

- Why should we have inventions?
- What are the problems which we face?
- How can we deal with these problems?
- What kind of inventions should we have in the future?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Our world faces .....
- We should stand together to .....
- We have different inventions like .....
- and .....

Lessons 3&4

SB pages 48-51

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

understanding (n)	فهم	hacker (n)	هاكر (متسلل يختلس المعلومات)
hide behind	يختبئ خلف	cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الالكتروني
post (n/v.ed)	ينشر/منشور	aim (n)	هدف/غاية
accept (ed)	يوافق	efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة
cool (ed)	يبرد	platform (n)	منصة (للتواصل الاجتماعي)
prove (d)	يبرهن على/يثبت	difference (n)	فرق/اختلاف
solve (d)	يحل	fact (n)	حقيقة
freeze (d)	يُجمَد	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
		nasty (adj)	قبيح/بغيض

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

rules (n)	قواعد	rude (adj)	وقح
password (n)	كلمة السر (كلمة المرور)	upset (adj)	منزعج
character (n)	حرف/علامة (كتابية)	horrible (adj)	سئ/فظيع
date of birth (n)	تاريخ الميلاد	simple (adj)	سهل/بسيط
comment (n)	تعليق	account (n)	حساب بنكى/او حساب على الانترنت
false name (n)	اسم مزيف	friend requests (n)	طلبات صداقة
top tip (n)	نصيحة هامة	tablet (n)	جهاز لوحى
delete (d)	يحذف	mix of (n)	خليط من
control (led)	يسيطر على	link (n)	رابط الكترونى
design (ed)	يصمم	personal information (n)	معلومات شخصية
download (ed)	يحمل (تطبيق)	young people (n) = youth	الشباب
guess (ed)	يخمن	relationship (n)	علاقة
record (ed)	يسجل	behavior (n)	سلوك
bully (ied)/(n)	يتنمر/الشخص المتنمر	natural (adj)	طبيعى
chat (ted)	يدردش (يتكلم بشكل ودى)	solid (adj)	صلب

Definitions

hacker	هاكر	a person who uses computers to get hold of private information
post	ينشر	to put on social media.
nasty	بغيض	very bad or unkind
accept	يوافق	agree to something.
cyberbullying	التنمر الالكترونى	treating someone bad either online or through electronic messaging.
hide behind	يختبئ خلف	to put yourself in a position where you cannot be seen.
prove	يبرهن	to show that something is true.
aim	هدف	what you want to achieve when you do something.
cool	يبرد	to lose heat.
freeze	يجمد	to turn water into ice.
efficiently	بكفاءة	quickly and with good results.
device	جهاز	a small electronic machine

Expressions & Prepositions

check social media	يتصفح وسائل التواصل	put in a password	توضع فى كلمة المرور
stay / keep safe online	يبقى آمن عبر الانترنت	in short	باختصار
post a comment / a photo	ينشر تعليق/صورة	careful of	حريص بشان
download an app	يُحمِّل تطبيق	delete....from.....	يحذف.....من
stay forever	يبقى الى الأبد	chat with	يتحدث مع
click on links	يضغط على الروابط	out with friends	بالخارج مع الأصدقاء
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	at sea level	بمستوى سطح البحر
accept a request	يقبل طلب	cool to	تنخفض درجة حرارته الى
do tests	يقوم بعمل اختبارات		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
horrible سئ جدًا	terrible	terrific / fantastic رائع
nasty بغيض	hateful	admirable محبوب
simple سهل/بسيط	easy	hard صعب
special مميز/فريد	unique	popular شائع
false مزيف	wrong	correct صحيح
personal شخص	private	public عام
strong قوى	powerful	weak ضعيف

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
cyber-	مرتبط بالإنترنت	cyberbully
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	understanding
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم فاعل	hacker
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	efficiently
un-	تحول الصفة الى عكسها	unpleasant

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
send	يرسل	sent	sent
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen
tell	يخبر	told	told

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 platform

رصيف فى محطة القطار.

Ex. Which platform does the train leave from?

منصة (تواصل اجتماعى)

Ex. I often use social media platforms like Facebook.

② it's + صفة + to -inf.

اذا بدأت الجملة بالتعبير (صفة + it's) ،يأتى بعده فعل بالمصدر مسبوقا بـ (to) :

Ex. It's important to study hard for the exam.

Ex. It's kind of you to help me.

③ like: يحب/مثل

يمكن استخدام كلمة (like) كفعل بمعنى (يحب) او كحرف جر بمعنى (مثل):

Ex. I like apples. (أحب التفاح)

Ex. Things like glass, paper, and plastic can be recycled. (مثل)

④ character: شخصية/حرف هجائى

تستخدم كلمة (character) بمعنى (شخصية) او بمعنى (حرف هجائى):

Ex. He has a cheerful character. (شخصية مرحه)

Ex. The English alphabet has 26 characters. (حروف هجائية)

⑤ accept / agree

• accept + noun يقبل شيء	• agree + to -inf. يوافق على فعل شيء
Ex. He accepted my request.	Ex. She agreed to wait for me.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Twitter, Facebook and WhatsApp are social media _____.

a. bins b. platforms c. pavements d. roads

2. The teacher didn't _____ to let me leave early.

a. accept b. tell c. keep d. agree

3. It's bad of her _____ at her teacher like that.

a. to shout b. shouting c. shouted d. shouts

4. I am proud of my dad. I want to be _____ him one day.

a. such b. like c. so d. but

Reading and listening skills — SB Page (48)

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص

When you go online to send messages, play video games, download an app or just check[1] your social media[2], it's important to remember a few simple rules[3] that can keep you safe.



١- يتصفح
٢- وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
٣- قواعد وقوانين
٤- رموز كتابية
٥- مخترقين/ متسللين

1. Choose strong passwords:

It's important to use a password that is a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters[4] like! & or $. Long passwords are also a good idea as they are hard to guess. Never use your name or date of birth, your pet's name, or anything that hackers[5] can guess from your social media.

2. Think before you post:

When you post a comment[6] or photo on social media, it stays there forever[7] - even if you delete [8] it from your account. Don't post or share anything nasty or false.

٦- تعليق
٧- للأبد
٨- يحذف

3. Be careful of friend requests:

Don't accept friend requests[9] from people you don't know. Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat with you and don't click on any links they send you. Never share personal information[10] with anyone.

٩- طلبات صداقة
١٠- معلومات شخصية

4. Be kind online:

Cyberbullying[11] is a big problem for young people. It's easier for bullies to post horrible messages online as they can hide behind a **false** name. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are online-at home, at school, or out with your friends. Tell an adult if someone is bullying you. And always be kind online.

١١- التنمر الالكتروني



Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about ..... يتحدث النص عن .....
   a. social media platforms b. staying safe online c. mobile phones d. tablets
2. The opposite of the word "false" can be .....
   a. wrong b. incorrect c. untrue d. true
3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الأخيرة فى جملة

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. It's important to remember a few simple rules that can keep you safe.
   من المهم أن تتذكر بعض القواعد البسيطة والقليلة والتى تحافظ عليك أمن.
2. Don't post or share anything nasty or false. لا تنشر أى شى قبيح أو خاطئ.
3. Never share personal information with anyone. لا تشارك أى معلومات شخصية مع أى شخص.
4. Cyberbullying is a big problem for young people. التنمر مشكلة كبيرة لصغار السن.

Answers:
1. b. staying safe online 2. d. true
3. Cyberbullying is a serious problem for young people as it can happen any time, so tell an adult and be kind online.

SB Page (50)

A talk about science and technology

Science and technology- so what's the difference?

The main difference(1) between science and technology is that they have different aims (2). Science tries to increase(3) our understanding(4) of how the world and everything in it works. Technology tries to solve problems(5) and help us to do things more efficiently(6). Science is about asking questions about the natural world, questions like, if this happens, why does this always happen next? It's about looking carefully and recording exactly what we see. In science, when we believe something is true, we do tests to check our ideas. If we can use science to prove something, we know it is a fact. For example, we can do tests to show that, at sea level, if fresh water cools to a temperature of zero degrees Celsius, it always freezes into solid ice.

In technology, we use the information we learn from science to solve problems and find new ways to do things. Sometimes we do this by making devices which can help us like phones and computers. If you want to understand the relationship between science and technology, think about electricity. Many devices use electricity. We can't design a new phone if we don't understand how electricity works. So, in short science can explain this for us. In short, science is about understanding the world, but technology is about doing things to help it.

١- اختلاف
٢- اهداف
٣- يزيد
٤- فهم
٥- حل المشكلات
٦- بكفاءة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hani and Sami are talking about social media

Sami : Hi, Hani. Do you always go online and check social media?
Hani : ❶ .....
Sami : ❷ ..... ?
Hani : I spend from two to three hours on social media every day.
Sami : ❸ ..... ?
Hani : I can keep safe online by not sharing any personal information with people? I don't know.
Sami : Do you have any friends online?
Hani : ❹ .....
Sami : How often do you chat with them?
Hani : ❺ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. ..... is to show that something is true.
   a. Prove b. Hide c. Freeze d. Keep
2. Don't ..... friend requests from people you don't know.
   a. ignore b. refuse c. accept d. agree
3. Don't post or share anything ..... or false.
   a. last b. fast c. tasty d. nasty
4. ..... means quickly and with good results.
   a. Slowly b. Efficiently c. Highly d. Wrongly
5. When you ..... a comment on social media, it stays there forever.
   a. poster b. post c. kill d. think

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. You can protect yourself from ..... by using strong passwords.
   a. Hackers b. Hats c. Guards d. Guests
7. Egyptians' main ..... is to develop their country.
   a. aid b. date c. aim d. character
8. The school wants the parents to know how to face .....
   a. cyberbullying b. accepting c. sleeping d. understanding
9. Water ..... at 0 Celsius.
   a. melts b. dies c. freezes d. drinks

10. Don't give people you don't know your _____ information.
a. local b. national c. personal d. personality

11. It is hot here. Please turn on the air conditioning to _____ the room.
a. warm b. warn c. cool d. tool

12. He asked me about my _____ of birth.
a. date b. tablet c. pet d. name

13. I couldn't meet him as the address was written in Chinese _____.
a. platforms b. characters c. ideas d. fans

14. You need to know the _____ to use the laptop.
a. hacker b. passport c. password d. buses

15. The prefix "cyber-" in cyberbulling means _____.
a. water b. internet c. shop d. mall

16. I _____ the latest album of Amr Diab from the internet.
a. stole b. rubbed c. guessed d. downloaded

Expressions & prepositions

17. Don't spend much time _____ Social media every day.
a. checking b. studying c. playing d. running

18. The main _____ between science and technology lies in their aims.
a. importance b. difference c. record d. comment

19. Scientists are still _____ tests on the new drug.
a. making b. bullying c. chatting d. doing

20. You should stay _____ online.
a. site b. sail c. safe d. save

21. Don't _____ on the links you receive from people you don't know.
a. freeze b. prove c. click d. develop

22. Sorry I deleted the file _____ the list by mistake.
a. to b. out c. for d. from

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

hide behind - horrible - terrific - Cyberbullying - out with

Cyerbullying is a big problem for youth. It's easier to post (1) _____ messages online as bullies can (2) _____ a false name. (3) _____ can happen any time you are online-at home, or (4) _____ your friends.

3 Punctuate the following sentence.

1. if i don t wear my glasses i can t see well _____
2. why does mr. ahmed say that _____



Language قواعد لغوية

The Present Simple تذكر: المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

يتكون المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل كما يلى:

go play eat watch

يضاف للفعل (s - es - ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد غائب (he - she - it).

goes plays eats watches

I / We / You / They /	اسم جمع	+inf.
He / She / It /	اسم مفرد	+inf. + (s / es / ies)

الاثبات:

Ex. Ali lives in Cairo.

Ex. We go to school by bus.

النفى:

Ex. They don't have time for playing.

Ex. She doesn't like ice cream.

Question السؤال

Yes - No

Ex. Do you study French?

Ex. Does Ali like chess?

Wh

Ex. When do they arrive?

Ex. Where does he work?

The Zero Conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

يستخدم المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط وجواب الشرط فى الحالة الصفرية.

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true.

تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق العلمية والأشياء الصحيحة دائمًا والعادات المتكررة:

Ex. If / when you boil water, it changes into steam.

Ex. If I feel thirsty, I always drink water.

Form التكوين

If / When + present simple (مضارع بسيط) + present simple (مضارع بسيط)

present simple (مضارع بسيط) if / when present simple (مضارع بسيط)

- تستخدم جملة جواب الشرط لتكوين سؤال:

Ex. If we mix red and yellow, what do we get?

- يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية فى إعطاء الأوامر (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل فى جملة جواب الشرط)

Ex. If something doesn't seem right, think and speak to your parents.

- لاحظ استخدام وعدم استخدام الفاصلة السفلية بين الجملتين:

Ex. If you add 2 and 2 (,) you get 4.

Ex. You get 4 if you add 2 and 2.

- اذا بدأنا الجملة الشرطية بـ (If/ When) نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. If it _____ in the desert, plants can appear. SB

a. rain b. rained c. rains d. raining

2. If you want a good phone, you _____ to spend money. SB

a. has b. have c. had d. having

3. _____ you press this button, it takes a photo. SB

a. If b. Of c. What d. Off

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. If we heat ice, it _____.

a. melt b. melts c. melting d. melted

5. If I am late for work, I _____ a taxi.

a. took b. takes c. taking d. take

6. If we _____ water, it turns into ice.

a. froze b. freeze c. frozen d. freezing

7. If I _____ enough sleep, I feel tired.
   a. get b. doesn't get c. don't get d. gets
8. What _____ if you boil water?
   a. happen b. happened c. happening d. happens
9. If you have breakfast, you _____ better.
   a. feels b. feel c. felt d. feeling
10. Glass _____ if we drop it.
   a. break b. broke c. breaks d. breaking
11. If it's too hot, we _____ indoors.
   a. stay b. stayed c. would stay d. were staying
12. If you _____ a nail in water, it sinks.
   a. put b. putting c. puts d. will put
13. If you don't water plants, they _____.
   a. died b. die c. dying d. would die
14. If you brush your teeth, they _____ healthy.
   a. become b. became c. becoming d. becomes
15. If you don't wear sunscreen, you _____ burnt.
   a. gets b. got c. getting d. get
16. If I don't exercise regularly, I _____ weight.
   a. gains b. gained c. gain d. gaining
17. If the baby _____ hungry, her cries.
   a. is b. was c. will be d. would be
18. If you _____ this link, you get connected to the website.
   a. clicking b. clicked c. clicks d. click
19. If you water a plant, it _____ well.
   a. grows b. grow c. growing d. grew
20. If you press this button, the machine _____ on.
   a. turned b. turn c. turns d. turning

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. If I don't wear my glasses, I _____ (not / can) see well.
2. If you play lots of video games, your eyes _____ (got) tired.
3. If you _____ (remember) the password, you cannot use the computer.

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. ..... (Did) you get orange if you mix red and yellow?

5. If we put water in a freezer, it ..... (not) turn into steam.

Speaking

Ask and answer about technological devices.

• السؤال والجواب عن الأجهزة التكنولوجية:

Question	Answer
- What do you think of technology? ما وجهة نظرك فى التكنولوجيا؟	- I think it is important أعتقد أنها مهمة.
- Which device do you think is the most important? أى جهاز تعتقد أنه الأهم؟	- I think phones are the most important. أعتقد التليفونات هى الأكثر أهمية.
- Why do you think that? لماذا أنت تعتقد ذلك؟	- Because we use them for many things!. لأننا نستخدمها فى أشياء كثيرة.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman and Amira are talking about technology

Eman : What are you reading, Amira?

Amira: 1 .....

Eman : An article! 2 .....?

Amira: It is about modern technology.

Eman : Which device do you think is the most important?

Amira: 3 .....

Eman : 4 .....?

Amira: Because we use phones for many things.

Eman : 5 ..... They are important in our life.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

hackers - characters - mix - guess - post

It's important to use a password that is a ① ..... of letters, numbers and special ② ..... Long passwords are a good idea as they are hard to ③ ..... Never use your name or anything that ④ ..... can guess from your social media.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The synonym of the word "nasty" can be ..... .
   a. admirable b. easy c. hateful d. public
2. If you accept something, this means you ..... to do this.
   a. agree b. look c. refuse d. break
3. Mesk spends hours ..... on the phone.
   a. eating b. chatting c. sleeping d. running
4. He hid ..... a false identity.
   a. near b. after c. before d. behind
5. If you ..... a sport, you get better at it.
   a. practise b. practises c. don't practise d. practising
6. If you don't water plants, they ..... grow well.
   a. didn't b. doesn't c. don't d. aren't
7. If we are late, we usually ..... a taxi..
   a. took b. take c. takes d. taking

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Our plants ..... (grew) well if it rains.
2. ..... (Did) ice melt if we heat it?
3. ..... (Where) happens if you boil water?
4. ..... (Where) you heat ice, it melts.
5. What ..... (are) you get if you add 2 and 3?

5 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"How to stay safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 52-55

استمع إلى المفردات
المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

limited-edition (n)	ذات إصدار محدود	scammer (n)	محتال/نصاب
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	official seller (n)	بائع معتمد
awesome (adj)	رائع/جميل	scam (v) (n) (med)	يحتال/احتيال
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرج/مرتبك	(ISEF)	المعرض الدولى للعلوم والهندسة
talented (adj)	موهوب	lead (led)	يقود/يُرشد
cautious (adj)	حريص	detect (ed)	يكتشف/يضبط
scientific research (n)	بحث علمى		

Vocabulary

gaming forum	منتدى ألعاب	vote (n)	تصويت
game console	جهاز التحكم فى الألعاب الالكترونية	Eventually (adv)	أخيرًا/فى النهاية
		glad (adj)	مسرور/سعيد
part-time job	وظيفة بدوام جزئى - لبعض الوقت	ashamed (adj)	خجلان/مستحٍ
savings (n)	مدخرات	gone (adj)	غير موجود/نافذ
profile (n)	ملف تعريف شخصى	the United States	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
positive reviews (n)	تقييمات/أراء إجابية	competition (n)	مسابقة
half price (n)	نصف الثمن	skills (n)	مهارات
shopping online (n)	تسوق عبر الإنترنت	smart life jacket (n)	سترة النجاة الذكية
winner (n)	فائز	check (ed)	يتحقق
dirty water (n)	ماء ملوث	explain (ed)	يشرح
reading difficulties (n)	صعوبات القراءة	realize (d)	يدرك
tech = technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	report (ed)	يبلغ عن
young people = youth	الشباب	trust (n) (ed)	يثق/ثقة
account (n)	حساب بنكى	rescue (d)	يُنفذ/يُخلص
a whole week (n)	أسبوع كامل	develop (ed)	يطور
payment (n)	دفع الثمن - الأجر		

Definitions

awesome	رائع	something really good or amazing
cautious	حريص	someone who does something slowly and carefully
limited-edition	ذات إصدار محدود	something of which there are only a few.
embarrassed	مُحرجُ / مرتبك	someone who feels ashamed by something.
expensive	غالى	something that costs a lot of money
scam	احتيال	a clever but dishonest way to get money

Expressions & Prepositions

catch his eye	استرعى / لفت انتباه	eye-catching	ملفت للنظر
make the payment	قاموا بسداد المبلغ المطلوب	No way!	مستحيل
		for sale	للبيع
his money was gone	خسر ماله	lead the way	يقود الطريق
seem right	يبدو على حق	at the fair	فى المعرض
as fast as possible	بأقصى سرعة ممكنة	aged = at the age of	بالغ من العمر
wait for	ينتظر	participate in	يشارك فى
days go by	مرت الأيام	work in groups	العمل فى مجموعات
speak up	يرفع صوته	on their own	بمفردهم
save up	يوفر / يدخر	in trouble	فى مأزق / مشكلة
hurt the planet	يضر الكوكب		

(Have) nothing to show for it = (Have) nothing as a result of something.

لم يخرج بفائدة من ذلك (رَجَعَ بِخُفَّى حنَين)

ISEF is the abbreviation for International Science and Engineering Fair

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
expensive غالى	pricey	cheap رخيص الثمن
awesome رائع	amazing	boring مُملّ
embarrassed مُحرجُ / مرتبك	shy	confident واثق من نفسه
cautious حريص	careful	careless مهمل
glad سعيد	happy	sad حزين

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ment	يحول الفعل لـ إسم	payment
-er	يحول الفعل لـ إسم	scammer / seller
-ed	يحول الفعل لصفه	talented
-ing	يحول الفعل لـ إسم	reading

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
read	يقرا	read	read
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
hurt	يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Nation - National - International

- **nation** دولة (أمة)

Ex. Egypt hosted the African cup of Nations.

- **National** قومى/وطنى

Ex. We should encourage our national team.

- **International** دولى/بين الدول

Ex. I went to Cairo International Airport to meet my uncle.

2 Be + gone

- هنا صفة بمعني غير موجود/نافذ/ضائع (gone)-

- **gone: not present any longer**

Ex. All his money was gone.

3 part-time / full-time

- **part-time** دوام جزئى

Ex. He has a part-time job.

- **full-time** دوام كلى

Ex. Our company is looking for full-time workers

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ he could be the first one to message the seller.
   a. May be b. May is c. Maybe d. May
2. Where is the coffee? It's all _____
   a. go b. going c. went d. gone

Reading

SB Page (52)

SB Page (52) Scammed

استمع إلى النصوص

Ali read the post carefully, and then read it again.
"No way!" he thought.

He was on his favorite gaming forum (1). Usually, he used it to chat to other gamers, but this morning another type of post caught his eye. In it, someone wanted to sell a limited-edition (2) games console. Consoles like that were very expensive, and there weren't many of them. Ali wanted it!

Ali checked the time of the post:2 am. It was now 8 am. Maybe he could be the first person to message the seller!

From his part-time (3) job in a restaurant, Ali had some savings (4). He also had LE500 from his grandma for his birthday. He checked his account: yes, he had enough for the console!

The seller had a good profile (5) and lots of positive reviews. So, Ali sent him a message.

This console looks awesome! (6) Why is it half price?

The seller replied quickly. He explained that the console was a present, but he already had one. He sent Ali some photos and videos of it.

Thanks, Ali messaged back. I'll take it!

The seller told Ali where to send the money, and Ali made the payment (7). He felt excited-his friends would be amazed when he told them!



Every day, Ali waited for the console to arrive. After three days, he messaged the seller again.

The console hasn't arrived yet. When did you send it?

Another three days went by. No reply. No console. Ali began to worry. He messaged the seller again.

The console still hasn't arrived. Please reply!

Nothing. A whole week went by, and then another, until finally Ali realized it was a scam (8). He felt terrible, and very embarrassed. All his money was gone and he had nothing to show for it (9).

Eventually, (10) Ali knew that he needed to tell someone.

Mom, Dad, I need to talk to you....



Ali felt much better after speaking to his parents. They helped him report the scammer.

The next time Ali went onto the gaming forum, the post was gone, He felt glad about speaking up (11), so the scammer couldn't do the same thing to someone else. He also learned to be cautious (12) when shopping online. It was a difficult lesson, but an important one.

Over the next few months, Ali worked hard at the restaurant and saved up (13) enough money to buy the console from an official seller.

"Remember" he said to his friends when he proudly (14) showed them his new console. "If something doesn't seem right, stop, think, and speak to your parents or another adult for advice. It could be a scam."

١- منتدى العاب
٢- ذات الاصدار المحدود
٣- دوام جزئي
٤- مدخرات
٥- ملف شخصى
٦- رائع
٧- دفع الثمن المطلوب
٨- عملية نصب واحتيال
٩- لم يتحصل على شئ
١٠- في النهاية
١١- أباح ما بصدره
١٢- حريص
١٣- ادخر ووفر
١٤- بفخر

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about .....
   a. Ali got married.
   b. Ali got caught.
   c. Ali got scammed.
   d. Ali got dressed.
2. Find from the passage an expression which means "attracted his attention"
   a. caught his eye.
   b. spoke up.
   c. was gone.
   b. went by.
3. Infer from the text a word that is a synonym for amazing.

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. He was on his favorite gaming forum. كان فى منتدى الألعاب المفضل لديه.
2. The seller had a good profile. كان للبائع ملف شخصى جيد.
3. Ali felt much better after speaking to his parents. شعر على بالارتياح بعد الحديث مع والديه.

Answers:
1. c. Ali got scammed. 2. a. caught his eye.
3. awesome

SB Page (54) Solve it with tech!

This month, 24 talented(1) students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated in(2) the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a competition(3) to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem.



١- موهوب
٢- شارك فى
٣- مسابقة
٤- علمى
٥- جوائز
٦- سترة النجاه
٧- يكتشف
٨- صعوبات

Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their scientific(4) research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners can study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes(5) for their inventions! Some of them had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems!





• Some project ideas in the competition

- A smart life jacket(6) that can help people in trouble at sea to be rescued as fast as possible.
- A technology that cleans dirty water in a way that doesn't hurt the planet.
- A mobile phone app that can detect(7) when a student has reading difficulties(8) and help them.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

Winners - scientific - groups - prizes - price

This month 24 talented students from Egypt participated in the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their ① ..... research skills and work in ② ..... or on their own. ③ .....can study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many ④ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. The seller wanted to sell a limited ..... games console. SB

a. attention b. fashion c. edition d. edit

2. The console looks .....! It is great. SB

a. awesome b. terrible c. horrible d. awful

3. This watch is too .....I can't buy it.

a. tall b. ship c. cheap d. expensive

4. Students ..... the way! They are scientists of the future. SB

a. laid b. lose c. lead d. lean

5. "....." is an illegal plan for making money.

a. Work b. Scam c. Scan d. Skim

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Trust him. He is a ..... driver.

a. careless b. bad c. terrible d. cautious

7. Mr. Ahmed felt ..... when he fell from the chair.

a. embarrassed b. happy c. glad d. proud

8. A smart ..... jacket helps people in trouble at the sea.

a. live b. love c. lives d. life

9. When you shop online, you have to buy from _____ sites.
a. unofficial b. official c. unknown d. bad

10. This site has many positive _____.
a. walls b. views c. reviews d. interviews

11. They spent all their _____ on the new house.
a. safe b. save c. thief d. savings

12. When you work with other people this means you work in _____.
a. classes b. groups c. world d. family

13. The opposite of the word "cautious" is _____.
a. well-known b. careful c. careless d. popular

14. All his money was gone. The word "gone" here is a\an _____.
a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. verb

15. To change the noun "dirt" into an adjective, we add the suffix _____.
a.-er b.-ment c.-ed d.-y

16. Ahmed El-Gendy is a _____ champion.
a. lazy b. talented c. bad d. slow

Expressions & prepositions

17. I tried to _____ the waiter's eye so we could order lunch.
a. catch b. hurt c. grab d. burn



18. All those years of hard work, and nothing to _____ for it.
a. hold b. see c. show d. play

19. I'm excited about the match. I can't wait _____ it.
a. of b. for c. on d. at

20. She is wearing an eye _____ dress. Everyone likes it.
a. watching b. catching c. winning d. going

21. This nice shirt is for _____. I'll buy it.
a. sell b. buy c. sale d. mail

22. The synonym for the verb "take part in" is _____ in.
a. speak b. participate c. make d. wait

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman got scammed yesterday

Ahlam : Why are you upset?

Eman : 1 .....

Ahlam : Scammed! 2 .....?

Eman : I ordered a present online.

Ahlam : 3 .....?

Eman : No, it didn't arrive.

Ahlam : Was it a trusted site?

Eman : 4 .....

Ahlam : You should tell your parents .

Eman : 5 .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1." ..... " means when you feel ashamed by something you did.
a. Confident b. Happy c. Embarrassed d. Glad

2. He comes first so he is the..... .
a. winner b. loser c. teacher d. vet

3. English has four .....: reading, writing, listening and speaking.
a. skulls b. skills c. skies d. keys

4. The opposite of the word "glad" is ..... .
a. fat b. pleased c. happy d. sad

5. It's important to ..... the payment on time.
a. do b. make c. take d. break

6. It's a ..... where mothers can exchange advice.
a. goat b. stadium c. forum d. stand

7. Ahmed and Eman have two children..... three and one.
a. age b. old c. elder d. aged

8.We shouldn't..... our planet.
a. protect b. hurt c. help d. fix

9. The products are unique. They are..... edition.
a. limited b. bad c. strong d. many

10. Students have to use their..... research skills.
a. sorts b. scientific c. relaxed d. bored

11. Ali's parents helped him report the ..... .
    a. doctor b. teacher c. nurse d. scammer
12. Arwa felt glad after speaking ..... .
    a. on b. up c. in d. for

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. why does ali trust the seller at first
2. egyptian students won many prizes

4 Write an email of (80-90) words to your friend:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Ali telling him about a bad experience you had. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmed@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com

.....
.....
.....
.....

New Message

To : ..... Cc Bcc
From : .....
Subject : .....

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Send

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية:

- **Why are you upset?**
- **What happened?**
- **What should you do?**
- **Is it a bad thing?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **We should stay safe online.**
- **Be careful next time. ..... .**
- **Never tell anyone your personal information. ..... .**

Review on Unit 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

ATM (n)	ماكينة الصراف الآلى	scientific research (n)	بحث علمى
green (adj)	صديق للبيئة	search engine (n)	محرك البحث
sustainable (adj)	مستدام	devices (n)	أجهزة
advertisement (n)	إعلان	understanding (n)	فهم
solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	scammer (n)	محتال/نصاب
battery (n)	بطارية	official seller (n)	بائع معتمد
social media (n)	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى	run (v)	يدير
fitness (n)	اللياقة البدنية	tap (ped)	ينقر
hacker (n)	هاكر (متسلل يختلس المعلومات)	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
cyberbullying (n)	التنمر الالكتروني	insert (ed)	يُدخل - يُدرج
aim (n)	هدف/غاية	press (ed)	يضغط على
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	click (ed)	يضغط على زرار
platform (n)	منصة (للتواصل الاجتماعي)	hide behind (v)	يختبئ خلف
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	post (n/v.ed)	ينشر/منشور
fact (n)	حقيقة	accept (ed)	يوافق
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	cool (ed)	يبرد
nasty (adj)	قبيح/بغيض	prove (d)	يبرهن على/يثبت
limited-edition (n)	ذات إصدار محدود	solve (d)	يحل
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	freeze (v)	يُجمَد
awesome (adj)	رائع/جميل	scam (v) (n) (med)	يحتال/احتيال
embarrassed (adj)	مُحرَج/مرتبك	(ISEF)	المعرض الدولى للعلوم والهندسة
talented (adj)	موهوب	lead (led)	يقود/يُرشد
cautious (adj)	حريص	detect (ed)	يكتشف/يضبط



Language قواعد لغوية

The imperative الأمر

Affirmative

أمر مثبت

باقي الجملة + Inf

Ex. Show me how to use it!

Ex. Tap the app to open it.

Negative

أمر منفى

باقي الجملة + Don't + inf

Ex. Don't stop pressing.

Ex. Don't stay up late.

• لتكوين صيغة الأمر نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل فى الأمر المثبت. ونبدأ بـ (Never/Don't) فى الأمر المنفى + مصدر الفعل

The Zero Conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق العلمية والأشياء الصحيحة دائمًا والعادات المتكررة:

Ex. If / when you boil water, it changes into steam.

Ex. If I feel thirsty, I always drink water.

Form التكوين

If / when + present simple مضارع بسيط + present simple مضارع بسيط

present simple مضارع بسيط If / when present simple مضارع بسيط

تستخدم جملة جواب الشرط لتكوين سؤال:

Ex. If we mix red and yellow, what do we get?

يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية فى إعطاء الأوامر (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل فى جملة جواب الشرط)

Ex. If something doesn't seem right, think and speak to your parents.

لاحظ استخدام وعدم استخدام الفاصلة السفلية بين الجملتين:

Ex. If you add 2 and 2(,) you get 4.

Ex. You get 4 if you add 2 and 2.

اذا بدأنا الجملة الشرطة (If/When) نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين

Speaking

Ask and answer about technological devices.

• السؤال والجواب عن الأجهزة التكنولوجية:

Question	Answer
- What do you think of technology? ما وجهة نظرك فى التكنولوجيا؟	- I think it is important أعتقد أنها مهمة.
- Which device do you think is the most important? أى جهاز تعتقد أنه الأهم؟	- I think phones are the most important. أعتقد التليفونات هى الأكثر أهمية.
- Why do you think that? لماذا أنت تعتقد ذلك؟	- Because we use them for many things!. لأننا نستخدمها فى أشياء كثيرة.

Paragraphs& Emails

Lessons 1&2

1. Inventions for the future.

Do you know about the future? Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of our planet and fix some of the problems it faces. Some search engines give the money they get to help tree-planting projects around the world. Scientists are developing batteries that work using material from plants.

General Exercises 1&2

2. Future projects.

When we go online, we see online advertisements. Some search engines give the money they get from advertisements to help tree-planting projects around the world. The world's oceans are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Oceans clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water, then ships take it back to land for recycling. Those are new projects which help our planet.

Lessons 3&4

3. How to stay safe online

The internet is very important. We use it every day. It is very useful. When you are online, you should follow some rules to stay safe. Keep your password secret. Don't tell anyone about it. Don't make friends with people you don't know. Don't tell people your personal information like your telephone number or your address. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.

Lessons 5&6

4. A bad experience online.

To : ali@gmail.com
From : ahmed@yahoo.com
Subject : A bad experience online

Dear Ali,

How are you and your family? I hope you the best. I want to talk to you about a bad experience online. An unknown person sent me a friend request, I accepted it because of his good profile. We started to chat for a while. We spent much time talking about our lives. But he asked for some personal information so I was scared about him. I realized it was a scam. Please, make sure before you add anyone.

Love you!
Ahmed

"Talented Egyptian Students"

This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14-18, joined the ISEF in America. It's a competition to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their scientific research skills. Winners can study for one year in America. Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions!

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Today is _____.
   a. Sunday b. Friday c. Monday d. Tuesday
2. My _____ is watching TV .
   a. father b. mother c. sister d. brother

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Abdo bought a new mobile

Omar : Congratulations on your new mobile.
Abdo : ❶ _____.
Omar : How much is it?
Abdo : ❷ _____.
Omar : ❸ _____?
Abdo : I bought it last week.
Omar : Have a great day!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The hacker can hide behind a _____ name.
   a. false b. real c. right d. correct
2. When you cross the road, you should be _____.
   a. nice b. careless c. cautious d. bad
3. We _____ many problems nowadays.
   a. play b. nose c. hand d. face
4. Don't _____ your rubbish here.
   a. life b. leave c. left d. leaving
5. _____ you add two and two, you get four.
   a. What b. When c. Where d. Why

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Computers are probably the most important modern invention. **They** are machines which follow programs that help store and control electronic information. A computer

can do difficult sums very quickly. Computers are important for three main reasons. They are flexible, accurate and can store a lot of information in their memory. Computers are now used in banks, factories and at home. The internet allows people to communicate with anyone around the world in seconds. Most books are now made with the help of computers. Even doctors use computers to help them examine their patients. So, we thank the inventor of this lovely machine.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why are computers important?

.....

2. Where can computers be used?

.....

3. Do you think computers are necessary in learning? Why / Why not?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "They" refers to .....

a. telephones b. machines c. computers d. instructions

5. To thank someone means that you are .....

a. pleased b. displeased c. ungrateful d. angry

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. can - do - you - at - What - an EcoATM? .....

2. skip - your - Don't - lessons. .....

3. are - think - important - I - phones. .....

4. worked - the - at - Ali - restaurant - hard. .....

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Future Inventions"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Exercises on Unit 4

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What is Salwa's job? .....

a. An engineer b. A nurse c. A scientist d. A teacher

2. What kind of job is it? .....

a. Busy b. Easy c. Boring d. ugly

3. What kind of ward does she work in? .....

a. Children's ward b. Men's ward

c. Women's ward d. Girls' ward

4. Why is Salwa looking forward to going home?

a. To text friends b. To read c. To eat d. To have a rest

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Emad is asking Adham about his father's job

Emad : What's your father's job, Adham?

Adham : (1) .....

Emad : (2) .....?

Adham : He works in a prep school.

Emad : (3) .....?

Adham : He teaches English to students.

Emad : Does he like his work?

Adham : (4) .....

Emad : Would you like to be a teacher like him?

Adham : (5) ..... I'd like to be a doctor.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

chat - profile - person - request - personal

Yesterday, an unknown person sent me a friend ① .....I added him because of his good ② ..... We started to ③ .....for a while, but he asked me some ④ ..... information. Finally, I realized it was a scam.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Robots play an important role in our life. They do different jobs. Some robots dive under water to study the sea. **Others** are sent inside volcanoes to study places that are dangerous. In 2012, scientists sent a robot to another planet to study the soil and the gases there.

Also, there are **personal** robots which are used to do jobs at home. They are used to clean floors and cut the grass in parks and gardens. In addition, some robots have friendly faces. So. Children think they are toys. These robots are very useful in hospitals. They can entertain children and help them to feel better.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. Do you think that robots can help in hospitals? Why? Why not?

.....

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The opposite of the word **"personal"** is .....

a. private b. popular c. nice d. wise

5. The underlined word **"others"** refers to .....

a. jobs b. planets c. robots d. parks

6. Robots have friendly .....

a. faces b. eyes c. hands d. noses

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You first need to install the app on your .....

a. advice b. advise c. vice d. device

2. Mesk should learn to use her time more .....
   a. carelessly b. efficiently c. badly d. warmly
3. Finally, Ali ..... it was a scam.
   a. realized b. slept c. studied d. worked
4. I wear ..... to listen to music.
   a. phones b. headphones c. radios d. helmets
5. The project ..... to find jobs for many people.
   a. cools b. proves c. aims d. loses
6. What ..... if you click on this picture?
   a. happened b. happen c. happens d. happening
7. If you ..... the button, it takes a photo.
   a. press b. not press c. pressing d. pressed
8. ..... the camera and take the photo
   a. Points b. Pointed c. Point d. Pointing
9. What happens if you ..... some oil?
   a. added b. adds c. adding d. add
10. If she ..... a lot, she learns more words.
    a. reads b. read c. reading d. to read

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The baby is sleeping! ..... (Been) quiet!
2. Never ..... (spoke) to me like that again.
3. If you don't remember the password, you ..... (can) use the phone.
4. If water ..... (cool) to (0) Celsius, it turns into ice.

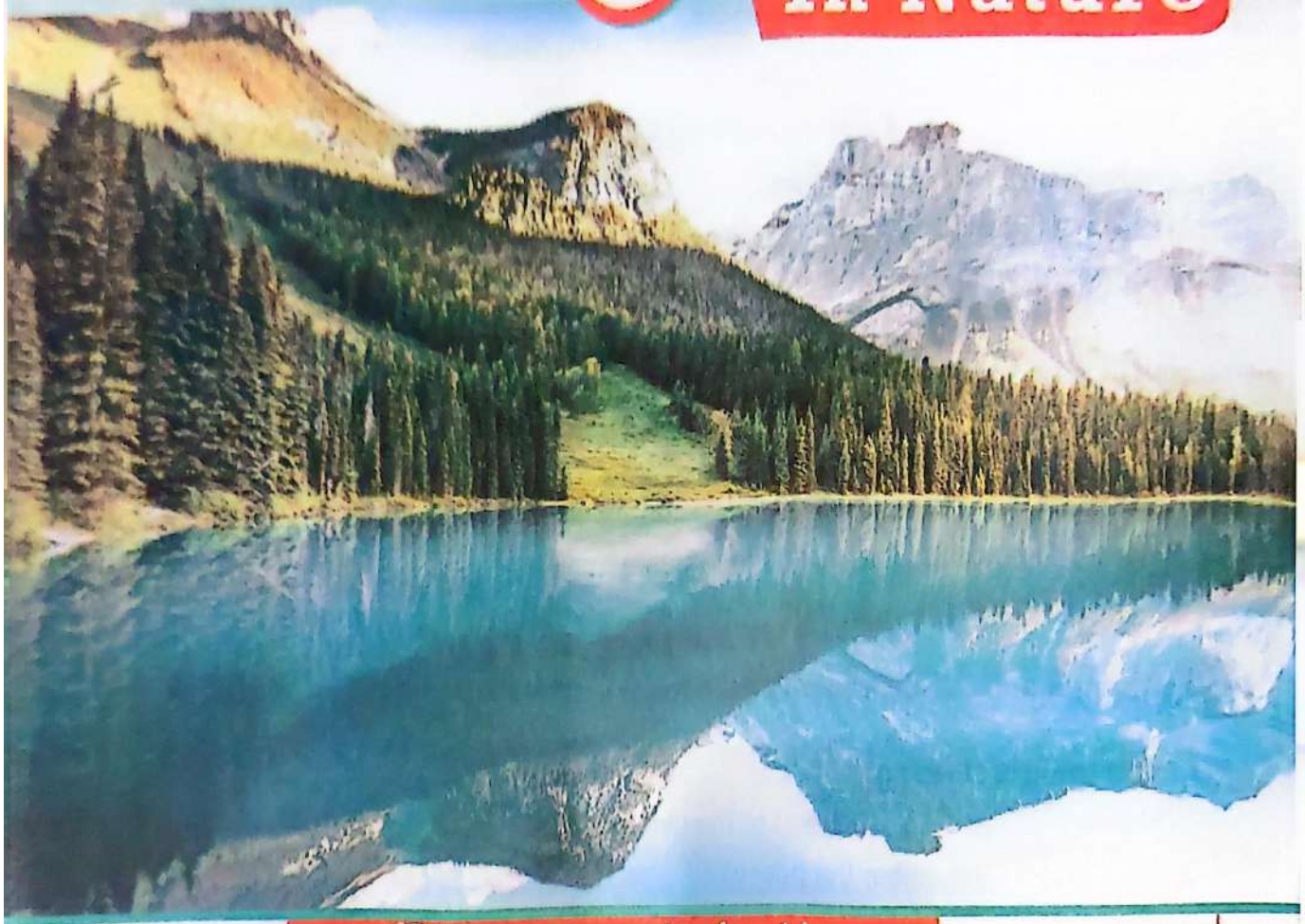
E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

"Talented Egyptian Students" (مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

New Hello! Beyond Words

Unit 5 In Nature



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

An article about how climate change is affecting people; An article about water scarcity; Helping the Earth: a poem

Writing:

A blog post about becoming more eco-friendly

Listening:

Understand a talk about geology

Speaking:

Talk about the effects of climate change; Making comparisons

Language:

Comparatives and superlatives; Articles

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 56-59

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

drought (n)	جفاف	effect (n)	تأثير
wildfire (n)	حرائق الغابات	technologies (n)	تقنيات
flood (n)	فيضان	fever (n)	حمي
water scarcity (n)	ندرة المياة	air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء
heatstroke (n)	ضربة شمس	impact (n)	تأثير
storm (n)	عاصفة	suffer (ed)	يعاني
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية	affect (ed)	يؤثر
transportation (n)	وسائل النقل والمواصلات	miss (ed)	يفتقد
worrying (adj)	مقلق/محير	produce (d)	ينتج
climate change (n)	التغير المناخي		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

enough (adj)	كاف	Earth's surface (n)	سطح الكرة الارضية
village (n)	قرية	resources (n)	مصادر
weather (n)	الطقس	reasons (n)	أسباب
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	crops (n)	محاصيل
degree (n)	درجة	lack (n)	نقص
leaves (n)	اوراق الاشجار	bacteria (n)	بكتيريا
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	adults (n)	بالغون
illness (n)	مرض	simple (adj)	بسيط
the world (n)	العالم	°C = degree Celsius (n)	درجة مئوية

Expressions & Prepositions

too.....to	جدا لدرجة الا	one of the most	واحدة من الأكثر
as well	أيضًا	reason for	سبب لـ
the last time	اخر مرة	on average	فى المتوسط
for too long	لمدة طويلة	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
normal for us	معتاد بالنسبة لنا	for example,	على سبيل المثال
because of	بسبب	pay for	يدفع لـ
on a farm	في المزرعة	lack of	نقص فى
stay in bed	يمكث بالسرير	plenty of	وفرة من

Definitions

drought	جفاف	when there is no rain for a long time
flood	فيضان	when there's too much rain
storms	عواصف	bad weather, with wind, rain, thunder and lightning
climate change	التغير المناخى	changes in the weather over time
water scarcity	ندرة المياه	where there isn't enough clean, fresh water for everyone

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
worried قلق	anxious	calm/relaxed هادئ
safe امن	secure / protected	dangerous خطير
clean نظيف	clear / pure / fresh	dirty قذر
ill مريض	sick	well بصحة جيدة
simple بسيط	easy	difficult صعب
important هام	significant	unimportant غير هام
dry جاف	dehydrated	wet مبتل

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-y	تحول الاسم الى صفة	healthy
-ness	تحول الصفة الى الاسم	illness
-ous	تحول الاسم الى صفة	dangerous

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
burn	يحرق/يحترق	burned/ burnt	burned/ burnt
have/has	يمتلك	had	had
fight	يقاتل/يقاوم	fought	fought
give	يعطى	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
pay	يدفع	paid	paid

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 because / because of + noun (v + ing)

- **because** جملة كاملة + لأن

Ex. I don't go out today because the weather was bad.

- **because of** بسب + الاسم / (v + ing)

Ex. I can't go out today because of the bad weather.

2 too + adj + to + inf جدا لدرجة ألا

Ex. The tea is too hot to drink. الشاى ساخن لدرجة ألا أستطيع شربه.

3 affect / effect

- **affect (v)** + يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر)

Ex. Bad weather affects us badly.

- **effect (n)** تأثير

Ex. Bad weather had bad effects on us.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My cousin had a heatstroke _____ the heat of the sun.
   a. because b. because of c. but d. and
2. I can't drink this tea. It's _____ hot to drink.
   a. two b. too c. toe d. to
3. Smoking has a bad _____ on us.
   a. health b. effect c. dessert d. flood

Reading

SB Page (57)

استمع إلى النصوص

Lesson 1: Climate change

How climate change is affecting me

1. Hi, I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is normal for us, but this summer the highest temperature(1) was 46 °C. That's about five degrees warmer than it normally(2) is. My family is having a lot of problems because of(3) the hot weather here.

a 

2. My family lives on a farm. Because of the hot weather, there's a drought(4) in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their leaves are brown. Because of the drought, we can't give the plants as much water as they need. My family therefore don't have enough tomatoes to sell. My dad is looking for a second(5) job so he can earn(6) more money.

b 

3. We're also having some problems(7) with our health. My mom had heatstroke(8) last week and she stayed in bed for three days because, she was too ill to get up. She had a fever(9) and she was really tired all the time. We were very worried about her, but, fortunately, she's feeling better now. Some of my friends had heatstroke, too. I'm trying to stay inside as much as possible, so I don't get heatstroke as well.

c 

4. The worst(10) thing about this summer for me was that our school closed for a week. The teachers said it was dangerous for us to travel to school because it was so hot. It was also too hot for us to be at school because we don't have air conditioning(11) there. I missed my friends when we couldn't go to school. I hope that never happens again!

d 

١. درجة حرارة
٢. بشكل طبيعى
٣. بسبب
٤. جفاف
٥. أخرى
٦. يكسب
٧. مشاكل
٨. ضربة شمس
٩. حمى
١٠. أسوأ
١١. تكييف الهواء

Reading Skill مهارة الكتابة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
2. Where's the drought right now?
3. What's the worst thing about this summer?

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems.
2. One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change.
3. Water scarcity affects people in different ways.

ندرة المياه واحدة من أكثر المشاكل المقلقة.
أحد أسباب ندرة المياه هو التغيير المناخى.
تؤثر ندرة المياه علي الناس بطرق مختلفة.

Answers:
1. Leonie had bad weather and the temperature was too hot.
2. In the south of Spain.
3. It was that Leonie's school closed for a week.

SB Page (58)

Thirsty planet



Water scarcity(1) is one of the most worrying(2) problems facing the world today. Although water covers more than 70% of Earth's surface, two billion people don't have enough(3) fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. Even in countries where there are good water resources(4), the water cannot always reach the people who need it.

One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change. On average(5), temperatures are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes and rivers.

Water scarcity affects people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they can't earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a negative(6) effect on their health. The biggest impact can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

Another problem is that people often can't find clean, safe water. The dangerous (7) metals and bacteria in dirty water can make them very ill. This can be more dangerous for children than for adults because their bodies are less able to fight the illnesses(8). Solving the problem of water scarcity is not simple(9). However, there are lots of things that can help such as finding new water sources and developing new technologies to produce and clean water. It is also important that people who live in countries with plenty of (10) water don't use too much of it. The worst thing that could happen is that no action is taken, and more people suffer.

١. ندرة المياه
٢. مقلق
٣. كاف
٤. مصادر
٥. متوسط
٦. سلبى
٧. خطير
٨. مرض
٩. بسيط
١٠. اوفرة من

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Khalid and Anas are talking about water scarcity.

Khalid : Did you read about water scarcity?

Anas : ❶ .....

Khalid : What does it mean?

Anas : ❷ .....

Khalid : ❸ .....?

Anas : It happens because of the drought.

Khalid : ❹ .....?

Anas : We should save water all over the world.

Khalid : ❺ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. When there isn't enough water in an area,it's a .....
   a. flood b. drought c. storm d. rain
2. When I walk in the sun for a long time, I have a .....
   a. cold b. flu c. heatstroke d. pen
3. Water from the river is coming into our house. There's a .....
   a. scarcity b. flood c. drought d. heatstroke
4. The trees are so dry, a ..... started and burnt them down.
   a. tour b. wildfire c. climate d. water
5. When there's strong wind .It's a .....
   a. star b. storm c. river d. lake
6. We don't have enough water to drink right now. There's .....
   a. flood b. waterfall c. water scarcity d. waterwheel
7. My dad is ill today, so he is staying in .....
   a. chair b. bed c. computer d. mobile

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Water covers more than 70% of Earth's .....
   a. face b. surface c. hand d. water
9. One of the reasons for water scarcity is ..... change.
   a. cloud b. climate c. people d. water
10. The farmers in our village didn't ..... much money this season.
    a. play b. earn c. burn d. eat

11. The dangerous metals and bacteria in dirty water can make the children _____.
a. well b. good c. ill d. funny
12. Solving the problem of water scarcity is difficult. It's not _____.
a. simple b. good c. fun d. happy
13. I have _____ of money, so I can buy what I need.
a. piece b. plenty c. part d. drop
14. "_____" is when there is too much rain.
a. Drought b. Flood c. Storm d. Wildfire
15. Water scarcity has a negative _____ on us.
a. affect b. effect c. storm d. flood
16. Dirty water can give you a lot of _____.
a. droughts b. illnesses c. sources d. storms

Expression and Prepositions

17. I don't have enough money to pay _____ the mobile.
a. of b. for c. in d. to
18. It's _____ for us to feel worried before exams.
a. wet b. normal c. dry d. clean
19. The bad weather has a bad effect _____ many people.
a. in b. of c. on d. for
20. On _____, temperatures are higher than they were in the past.
a. over b. average c. middle d. time



Language قواعد لغوية

Comparative and Superlative Adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

- تنقسم الصفات الى قصيرة المقطع وطويلة المقطع.

من امثلة الصفات القصيرة :

noisy	صاخب	green	صديق للبيئة	clean	نظيف
high	عالى	dry	جاف	hot	حار

من امثلة الصفات الطويلة

dangerous	خطير	expensive	غالى الثمن	attractive	جذاب
comfortable	مريح	difficult	صعب	different	مختلف

- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة Comparative للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل Superlative للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.

● تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than "higher than"	the + صفة + est "the highest"
	Ex. On average the temperatures are higher than they were in the past.	Ex. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
long adjective "dangerous"	أكثر أقل more / less + صفة + than	الأكثر الأقل the most / the least + صفة
	Ex. Lions are more dangerous than dogs.	Ex. Lions are the most dangerous animals in the zoo.



- من الممكن أن نستغنى عن than عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

Ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is cleverer (than her).

توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى:

many	كثير (اسم يعد)	more than	⟶	the most
few	قليل (اسم يعد)	fewer than	⟶	the fewest
much	كثير (اسم يعد)	more than	⟶	the most
little	قليل (اسم يعد)	less than	⟶	the least
good	جيد	better than	⟶	the best
bad	سىء	worse than	⟶	the worst
far	بعيد	farther / further than	⟶	the farthest / furthest

Ex. The weather today is worse than it was yesterday.

Ex. Water covers more than 70% of the surface of the earth.

● للتعبير عن تساوى شخصين / شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Farmer's can't grow as many crops as they used to.

Ex. Mona makes money as much as Amal does.

Ex. Droughts are as serious as floods.

• للتعبير عن عدم تساوى شخصين / شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم

اسم + ... + not as/so + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Australia is not as hot as Africa.

• عند التعبير عن (عدم) التساوى بين فعلين نستخدم:

فعل + فاعل + as + حال + (not) as/so + فعل

Ex. She doesn't speak English as carefully as she writes it.

ملاحظات: تكوين صفات المقارنة / التفضيل

large → larger close → closer

• يضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ e

• إذا انتهت الصفة بـ حرف ساكن + y تحول y إلى i نضيف er أو est :

dry → drier than → the driest / busy → busier than → the busiest

• إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير:

hot → hotter than → the hottest / thin → thinner than → the thinnest

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. This summer, the _____ temperature was 46°c.
   a. high b. highest c. more high d. as high
2. The tomato plants on our farm were getting _____ than in the past.
   a. small b. smallest c. smaller d. more small
3. My sister was ill, but she's feeling _____ now.
   a. bad b. better c. worst d. more bad
4. The _____ thing about this summer for me was that our school closed.
   a. worse b. more bad c. worst d. most bad
5. Temperature is _____ than they were in the past.
   a. high b. more high c. highest d. higher
6. The _____ impact of high temperature can be on children.
   a. big b. biggest c. bigger d. more big

7. The bacteria in dirty water can be ..... dangerous for children than for adults.
   a. most b. the more c. more d. many
8. The weather in the desert is ..... than in the valley.
   a. dry b. drier c. more dry d. as dry
9. The children are less able to fight the illness ..... the adults.
   a. that b. the c. than d. then
10. Water scarcity is one of the ..... worrying problems.
    a. more b. most c. many d. much

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. That's ..... boy in our class.
    a. the tallest b. taller c. the taller d. more taller
12. The red T-shirt is the ..... expensive one.
    a. as b. less c. least d. as little
13. I think my village is the ..... place the to live.
    a. better b. best c. good d. bad
14. My laptop is newer ..... your laptop.
    a. that b. then c. the d. than
15. Cairo Tower is the ..... building in Cairo.
    a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. as tall
16. I think the elephant is the ..... animal in the world.
    a. heavy b. heaviest c. heavier d. as heavy
17. She won a prize for the ..... drawing.
    a. good b. better c. best d. as good
18. Jupiter is ..... than the Earth.
    a. biggest b. bigger c. as big d. more big
19. Climate change is the ..... problem we face today.
    a. dangerous b. more dangerous
    c. most dangerous d. dangerous as
20. Yesterday's homework was the ..... We did it quickly.
    a. easy b. easiest c. easier d. as easy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Climate change is the ..... (more) dangerous problem.
2. Lake Nasser is ..... (big) lake in the world.
3. Your car is ..... (newest) than my car.

4. Mount Everest is the ..... (high) mountain in the world.
5. Well done, your homework is ..... (good) than my homework.
6. I think Arabic is ..... (most) difficult language.
7. August is ..... (hot) than November.

Speaking

Talking about climate change: • السؤال والاجابة عن التغير المناخي:

Question	Answer
- What are the effects of climate change? ما هى تأثيرات التغير المناخى؟	- Water scarcity is one of the effects. ندرة المياه هي احدى هذه التأثيرات
- How does water scarcity affect people? كيف يؤثر نقص المياه علي الناس؟	- They don't have enough water to drink. ليس لديهم ماء كافى للشرب.
- What's the greatest impact for water scarcity? ما هو أكبر تأثير لنقص المياه؟	- The biggest impact can be on children, it make them ill. أكبر تأثير يكون علي الأطفال ويجعلهم مرضي

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Mohamed are talking about climate change

Ahmed : Hi Mohamed! What's the weather like today?
Mohamed: It's too hot, it's 44 degrees.
Ahmed : Oh (1) .....?
Mohamed: Yes, high temperature can give you a heatstroke.
Ahmed : What should I do to protect myself?
Mohamed: (2) .....
Ahmed : You are right. Walking in the hot weather is very bad.
Mohamed: (3) .....?
Ahmed : It can affect children badly, high temperature can make them ill?
Mohamed: (4) .....
Ahmed : What can we do to solve this problem?
Mohamed: (5) .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

earn - affects - higher - grow - children

Climate change is one of the reasons for water scarcity. On average, temperatures are ① _____ than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes. Water scarcity ②_____ people in different ways. Farmers, for example can't ③ _____ as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they can't ④ _____ enough money to pay for clean water.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A " _____ " is when there's too much rain in an area.
   a. drought b. flood c. storm d. wildfire
2. My village is _____ than the city.
   a. quiet b. as quiet c. quieter d. the quietest
3. It's very hot in our house and we don't have_____ to cool it.
   a. cooker b. TV
   c. air conditioning d. the kettle
4. Amr is _____ tall as Adel. They are the same height.
   a. more b. as c. most d. the most
5. Health is _____ important than money.
   a. most b. least c. more d. little
6. My brother goes to his work by bus. He uses public _____ .
   a. transportation b. rule c. effect d. storm

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Math is the _____ (exciting) subject at school.
2. Yesterday was hotter _____ (then) today.
3. I think tennis is the _____ (less) interesting sport.
4. My grandpa is _____ (old) than my grandma.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

I m ahmed. I live in luxor

Lessons 3&4

SB pages 60-63

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bird feeder (n)	وعاء لإطعام الطيور	geology (n)	علم الجولوجيا
electronic devices (n)	أجهزة الكترونية	hanging basket (n)	اصيص زرع (معلق)
minerals (n)	معادن	features (n)	خصائص
eco-friendly (n)	صديق للبيئة	rocks (n)	صخور
air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء	resources	موارد/مصادر
layers (n)	طبقات	consume (d)	يستهلك
marble (n)	حجر الرخام	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع
sandstone (n)	حجر رملي	melt (ed)	ينصهر
basalt (n)	حجر البازلت	form (ed)	يتكون - يشكل
audience (n)	جمهور		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

tips (n)	نصائح	Ireland (n)	إيرلندا
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	alarm (n)	منبه/انذار
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحى	results (n)	نتائج
power (n)	طاقة	fuel (n)	وقود
machine (n)	آلة	ideal (adj)	مثالي
games console (n)	وحدة التحكم للألعاب	bottom (n)	اسفل
Earth's crust (n)	القشرة الأرضية	swap (ped)	يتبادل
bath (n)	حمام - استحمام	waste (d)	يهدر
liquid (n)	سائل	generate (d)	يولد (طاقة)
recycling bin (n)	سلة مهملات	design (ed)	يصمم
the Sphinx (n)	أبو الهول	press (ed)	يضغط
Ancient Greece (n)	اليونان القديمة	cool (ed)	يبرد
The Giant's Causeway (n)	ممر العمالقة فى (إيرلندا)	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام

Unit 5 In Nature

Definitions

bird feeder	وعاء طعام للطيور	a garden container of food for bird
air conditioning	نظام تكييف الهواء	a machine to cool your home
geology	جولوجيا	the study of rocks
consume	يستهلك	to use something
save energy	يوفر طاقة	not waste electricity or fuel
on stand-by	في وضع التشغيل	not switched on but using power
hanging basket	اصيص زرع معلق	a container for plants

Expressions & Prepositions

a five-minute shower	حمام لمدة خمس دقائق	in use	قيد الاستخدام
waste electricity	يهدر الكهرباء	on stand - by	في وضع التشغيل
save water	يوفر الماء	at the bottom	فى القاع
it's possible to	من الممكن	depend on	يعتمد علي
set the alarm	يضبط المنبه	a container for	وعاء لـ
make a difference to	يحدث فارق لـ.....	melt into	ينصهر لـ
have a shower	يأخذ دش/يستحم	agree on	يوافق علي
as a result of	نتيجة لـ	layers of	طبقات من
		the ideal time for	التوقيت المثالي لـ

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
great رائع	wonderful	terrible سيئ جدا
agree يوافق	accept	disagree يرفض
save يوفر	keep	waste يُهدر

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
re-	القيام بالفعل مرة اخري	reuse
-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم	feeder / container
-ity	تكوين الاسم من الصفة	electricity
-ion	تكوين الاسم من الفعل	action

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
come	ياتي	came	come
find	يجد	found	found
break	يكسر	broke	broken
set	يضبط	set	set
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 made of / made from

- **made of**
  مصنوع من (المادة الخام واضحة لا تتغير)

Ex. The chair is made of wood.

- **made from**
  مصنوع من (المادة الخام تتغير او تكون غير واضحة)

Ex. The cake is made from flour,eggs,and butter.

2 layer / liar

- **layer (n)** طبقة

Ex. The Earth's surface is made up of layers of rocks.

- **liar (n)** كاذب

Ex. I don't trust him. He is a liar.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The window is made _____ glass.

a. from b. of c. at d. with

2. The cookies are made _____ flour and butter.

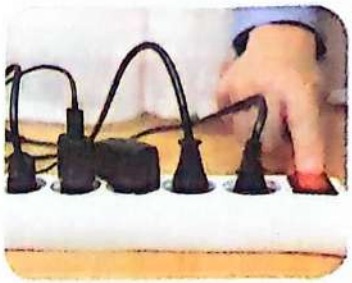
a. in b. of c. from d. to

Reading

SB Page (60)

Tips to be more eco-friendly in the home

استمع إلى النصوص



Air conditioning[1], hot water, and electronic devices[2] in our homes all use a lot of electricity. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources[3], which can make climate change worse. Let's help our planet - let's save energy[4] at home!

a. Remember to always switch off lights, TVs, computers, games consoles[5], tablets, and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand-by[6] as this still consumes a lot of energy and don't use more than one device at the same time!



b. There are about 150 to 200 liters of water in an average[7] bath, but there's only between 30 and 80 liters in a five-minute shower. Showers are a great way to save water[8] and energy. But don't spend a long time in the shower: set the alarm[9] on your phone for five minutes and then stop!

c. There are lots of things in our trash that we can recycle or even reuse at home. Plastic bottles are a good example. Reuse them to make other things, for example a bird feeder, or a hanging basket for your plants.

١. تكييف الهواء
٢. أجهزة الكترونية
٣. مصادر
٤. يوفر الطاقة
٥. أجهزة التحكم بالألعاب
٦. وضع التشغيل
٧. فى المتوسط
٨. توفير المياه
٩. منبه

SB Page (62)

Types of rocks

Teacher:

Good morning class. Today we're looking at different types of rocks for module 3 on the structure(1) of the Earth. Tarek, please show the first slide. That's it, thank you. The Earth's surface(2) is, as you can see, made up of layers(3) of rocks. Rocks are solids(4) which are made of minerals. Rocks can be grouped(5) into three types depending on which minerals(6) they contain and how they were formed.

Teacher:

The three types of rock we're looking at today are sandstone(7), basalt(8), and marble. Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface. It's formed from the broken parts of other rocks and material when they press(9) together. The youngest layers of sandstone are at the top. The oldest layers are at the bottom. The Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things, like the Sphinx at Giza. Now, if rock becomes very, very hot, it melts(10) into liquid. Basalt is a type of rock that forms when liquid rock cools(11) again and becomes solid. We find these rocks in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It can make some amazing natural shapes.

Here's an example. This is the Giant's Causeway in Ireland. Finally, let's look at marble. Marble is also found in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It forms when other types of rock get very hot and the minerals in them change form. Marble is a very strong type of rock. It is often used to make statues, like this one here from Ancient Greece.

١. تركيب
٢. سطح الأرض
٣. طبقات
٤. أشياء صلبة
٥. تجمع فى مجموعات
٦. معادن
٧. حجر رملى
٨. حجر البازلت
٩. يضغط
١٠. يذوب
١١. يبرد

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. _____ electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources.
   a. Doing b. Making c. Putting d. Eating
2. This historic building is made of _____.
   a. marbles b. geology c. shapes d. baskets

3. Yara likes to _____ old things. This will help the environment.
   a. waste b. form c. recycle d. cool
4. Basalt is a type of _____.
   a. wool b. wood c. air d. rock
5. Saving energy at home _____ a difference to climate change.
   a. does b. makes c. puts d. goes
6. We need more _____ to finish the project.
   a. alarms b. effects c. materials d. feeders
7. The player waved to the _____ during the match.
   a. title b. audience c. container d. planet
8. Laila had a heatstroke as a _____ of walking for too long in the sun.
   a. devices b. planet c. result d. source
9. The Sphinx is made of _____.
   a. paper b. sandstone c. wool d. plastic

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Earth is the green _____ in the solar system.
    a. plant b. plane c. plate d. planet
11. _____ products are safe for the environment.
    a. Eco-friendly b. Plastic c. Unhealthy d. Electric
12. We saw many _____ in Abu Simple Temple.
    a. statues b. trees c. rocks d. pens
13. When rocks become very hot, they _____ into liquid.
    a. freeze b. melt c. cool d. save
14. The prefix "_____" means to do something again.
    a. un- b. dis- c. re- d. ir-
15. A/An _____ is a garden container of food for birds.
    a. hanging basket b. games console
    c. bird feeder d. electronic device
16. The verb "save" is the opposite of the verb "_____".
    a. taste b. waste c. see d. like
17. The weather is _____ today. Let's go out.
    a. ideal b. renewable c. eco-friendly d. broken

Expression and Prepositions

18. Please, switch _____ the lights before you leave the room.
    a. on b. off c. at d. of

19. If you want to get up early for work, ... the alarm on your phone.
a. send b. waste c. set d. play

20. Don't touch ..... wires when your hands are wet.
a. electronic b. electricity c. electric d. electrician



Language قواعد لغوية

Definite and Indefinite Articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

Articles (the / a-an) الأدوات

The definite article (the) أدوات المعرفة

تستخدم أداة المعرفة (the):

١- قبل الاسم المحدد (شيء ما) والمعرف تماما.

Ex. I bought the mobile we saw last week.

٢- مع الاسم الذي تم ذكره في الجملة للمرة الثانية (الأولي نكرة والثانية معرفة).

Ex. I saw a boy in the street. The boy is a student .

٣- مع الأشياء الفريدة من نوعها في الكون مثل (الأرض - الشمس - القمر - السماء - أسماء البحار والأنهار والمحيطات).

Ex. The sun gives us heat and light.

Ex. The moon appears at night.

Ex. The Red Sea is very deep.

٤- مع أسماء الأماكن العامة والمشهورة والسينما والمسرح وأماكن الترفيه العامة.

the zoo - the Hilton Hotel - the cinema - the theater - the club.

Ex. I went to the cinema yesterday.

٥- مع أسماء الآلات الموسيقية

Ex. I play the piano every Friday.

٦- مع أسماء البلاد المركبة أو اختصارات البلاد:

the United Kingdom (the UK) - the United States of America (the USA)

Ex. The United Arab Emirates / (the UAE).

٧- مع الاختراعات والاكتشافات الحديثة:

Ex. The internet is a great invention.

٨- مع بعض الصفات للدلالة علي اسم جمع (من الصفة):

Ex. The rich should help the poor.

The indefinite article (a/an) أدوات النكرة

وهي أدوات تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد.

Ex. He is reading a book in the library.

Ex. I saw an elephant in the zoo yesterday.

an

١- تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (a.e.i.o.u) (vowels)

an apple - an elephant - an orange - an ox - an impact

٢- تستخدم قبل الاختصارات التى تبدأ بصوت متحرك:

(an X-ray - an SMS - an MP3 player)

٣- إذا بدأت الكلمة بحرف لا يُنطق و لا ينطق نتعامل مع الحرف الذي بعده في النطق:

(an hour- an honest man)

a

١- تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن :

a boy - a pen- a dog - a book - a girl - a horse - (consonants)

٢- إذا نطق حرف (u) كصوت حرف ساكن فيُسبق بأداة النكرة (a) :

(a uniform - a university - a European city - a union).

no article

١- لانستخدم أداة مع : - أسماء العلم (أسماء الأشخاص - أسماء البلاد والقارات - أسماء الأيام والشهور - أسماء المواد الدراسية - أسماء اللغات - أسماء الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والهوايات والالقاب.

Ahmed - Cairo- Egypt - Africa - Sunday - May - math - Arabic- tennis - reading - Mr Ali

٢- لا نستخدم اداة قبل صيغة الجمع للاسماء المعدودة (اذا تحدثنا عن النوع)

cars - camels

٣- لا نستخدم اداة قبل (الاسماء غير المعدودة)

sugar - water -rain - marble - cotton

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We find these rocks in the bottom of layers of _____ Earth's surface.
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
2. Many statues from _____ Ancient Greece are made of marble.
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
3. There are a lot of pyramids in _____ Egypt.
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
4. We saw _____ ox in the zoo.
   a. a b. no article c. the d. an
5. Aswan is _____ famous city in Egypt.
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
6. I see _____ moon in the sky at night.
   a. no article b. a c. the d. an
7. He is carrying _____ bag.The bag is full of books.
   a. an b. a c. the d. no article

8. _____ Giant's Causeway in Ireland is made of stone.
   a. A b. An c. The d. No article
9. _____ science is my favorite subject.
   a. A b. An c. No article d. The
10. My friend Adel traveled to _____ USA last year.
   a. A b. An c. The d. no article
11. I don't go to school on _____ Friday.
   a. A b. An c. The d. no article
12. The Sphinx is in _____ Giza.
   a. A b. An c. the d. no article
13. Do you have _____ cat at home?
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
14. I always watch films on _____ TV.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
15. _____ camels live in the desert.
   a. A b. An c. The d. No article
16. I never eat _____ meat.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
17. I ate _____ orange. It was delicious.
   a. a b. an c. an d. the
18. _____ sky is blue.
   a. A b. An c. no article d. The

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Plastic bottles are _____ (an) good example. Reuse them to make other things. SB
2. I live in a village in Andalusia in _____ (a) Spain. SB
3. Making electricity uses a lot of _____ (a) planet's resources. SB
4. Sandstone is usually found near _____ (an) Earth's surface. SB
5. My sister likes playing computer games on _____ (an) internet.
6. There are many rocks in _____ (a) Earth's crust.
7. Our teacher, _____ (an) Mr Mahmoud,is from Alexandria.
8. My father is _____ (teacher).
9. I never eat _____ (a meat).

Speaking

Asking and answering about ways to protect the environment.

السؤال عن طرق حماية البيئة والاجابة عليها.

Question	Answer
- How can we protect the environment? كيف نستطيع حماية البيئة؟	- We can protect the environment by saving energy. توفير الطاقة إحدى الطرق لحماية البيئة.
- How can we be eco-friendly at home? كيف نصبح أصدقاء للبيئة فى المنزل؟	- You can switch off lights, when they aren't in use. يمكنك إطفاء الأنوار الغير مستخدمة.
- What can we recycle at home? ما الذى نستطيع اعادة تصنيعه بالمنزل؟	- We can recycle old bottles. يمكننا إعادة تصنيع الزجاجات البلاستيكية.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mahmoud and Mustafa are talking about how to be eco-friendly

Mahmoud : What does eco-friendly mean?

Mustafa : ❶ .....

Mahmoud : What should we do to help the environment?

Mustafa : ❷ .....

Mahmoud : What can I do to save energy?

Mustafa : ❸ .....

Mahmoud : ❹ .....?

Mustafa : You can have short showers.

Mahmoud : That's ❺ .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

feeder - example - reuse - basket - electricity

There are a lot of things in our trash that we can recycle or ❶ ..... at home. Plastic bottles are a good ❷..... We can reuse them to make other things, for example a bird ❸..... or a hanging ❹..... for your plants. Everyone can save energy in different ways in our life.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. Set the _____ to help you get up at 7:30 am for work.
   a. minerals b. shower c. alarm d. energy
2. Try not to _____ electricity or energy.
   a. cool b. waste c.keep d. protect
3. A/An _____ is a container for growing plants.
   a. oven b. hanging basket c. bird feeder d. air conditioning
4. I always put wheat in the bird _____ for birds to eat.
   a. eater b. fence c. feeder d. map
5. **A:** Do you have _____ orange? **B:** I want to eat fruit.
   a. the b. a c. an d. no article
6. Wood floats on the _____ of the water.
   a. underground b. middle c. bottom d. surface
7. I have _____ banana and an apple.
   a. no article b. a c. an d. the
8. Don't waste a lot of water when you have a _____.
   a. home b. shower c. plant d. basket
9. My friend _____ Osman needs a lot of money to buy things.
   a. a b. no article c. the d. an
10. you can _____ plastic bottles to make new objects.
    a. burn b. plant c. reuse d. damage

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you like playing _____ (the football)?
2. Who is _____ (best) player in the team?
3. I played games for _____ (a hour).
4. _____ (A) River Nile is very important for Egypt.

5 Write a paragraph of about (80-90) words on:

"How to save energy"

_____

_____

_____

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- **Where can you put the trash?**
- **What should we do to save energy?**
- **How can we save water?**
- **How can we save electricity?**

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الاتية

- **You can put the trash.....** - **We should save energy.....**
- **We can save water by.....**
- **We can save electricity.....**

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 64-67

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	worth (adj) (n)	ذو قيمة - مستحق
poet (n)	شاعر	trash (n)	قمامة
poem (n)	قصيدة	dive (d)	يغوص
recyclable (adj)	قابل لاعادة التصنيع	save (d)	يوفر
tech devices (n)	اجهزة إلكترونية		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

bees (n)	نحل	changes (n)	تغييرات
stanza (n)	مقطع/ بيت شعري	eco-blog (n)	مدونة صديقة للبيئة
lights (n)	مصابيح الإضاءة	human (adj)	انساني
value (n)	قيمة	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
blank (n)	فارغ	recycling bin (n)	سلة مهملات
below (prep)	اسفل	personification (n)	التجسيد
line (n)	سطر	dolphin (n)	الدولفين
structure (n)	هيكل/بناء	rhyme (n)	يسجع/يقفى
rhyme (d) (n)	يتناغم/قافية	cycle (d)	يركب دراجة
tap (n)	حنفية/صنبور		

Definitions

look after	يعتني ب	to take care of
worth	قيمة/ مستحق	the value of something
dive	يغوص	jump into the water
Earth	كوكب الارض	the planet we live on

Expressions & Prepositions

grow hotter	يزداد سخونة	travel to school	يذهب للمدرسة
make changes	يحدث تغييرات	(be) in need	محتاج
rather than	بدلاً من	switch off / turn off	يطفىء - يغلق
no matter	لا يهم	decide to	يقرر ان
		put (something) in	يضع (شئ) فى مكان

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
fun ممتع	enjoyable	boring ممل
worth ذو قيمة	value	worthless عديم الفائدة

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-able	لتحويل الفعل لصفة	recyclable
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال أو ظرف	easily

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
drive يقود	drove	driven
grow ينمو	grew	grown
throw يرمي	threw	thrown
ride يركب	rode	ridden

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 plant / planet

- **plant** نبات

Ex. The boy watered the plants.

- **planet** كوكب

Ex. The Earth is the planet where we live.

2 poem / poet

- **poem** قصيدة

Ex. I read a beautiful poem yesterday.

- **poet** شاعر

Ex. Hafez Ibahim is called the poet of the Nile.

3 rather than

- **rather than** بدلا من

Ex. I'd like to drink coffee rather than tea.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I watered the ..... yesterday.

a. plants b. planes c. plans d. planets

2. My friend's father is a great ..... . He writes poems.

a. poem b. poet c. poetry d. boat

3. Neptune is the farthest ..... from the sun.

a. plane b. planet c. plant d. plate

Reading and listening skills

SB Page (64)

استمع إلى النصوص

Helping the Earth

Stanza 1

As the Earth grows hotter and wetter(1),
We need to learn to look after it better.
A drought(2) here, a flood there,
We can help, no matter(3) where!



Stanza 2

Turn off lights that you don't need,
Turn off that tap(4), others are in need(5),
Walk or cycle(6) rather than drive.
Don't throw plastic where dolphins dive!

Stanza 3

Plant more flowers, plant more trees,
For the birds and for the bees.
We must try for all we're worth(7),
So we can save our Planet Earth!

Moira Dutton

١. اكثر رطوبة
٢. جفاف
٣. لا يهم
٤. صنبور
٥. محتاج
٦. يركب دراجة
٧. ذو قيمة/ مستحق

Identifying the structure of a poem

Every poem has a different structure. The structure helps to show us what the poem is about or how the poet felt when he or she wrote it. When you look at a poem and you want to know what structure it has, notice these things about it:

كل قصيدة لها بناء مختلف. يساعد هذا البناء في توضيح موضوع القصيدة وما هو شعور الشاعر عند كتابة القصيدة. هناك ثلاث عوامل للتعرف على القصيدة:

1. How many stanzas it has -Stanzas are the different parts of a poem that usually have a blank line between them.
١- المقاطع الشعرية هي الأجزاء المختلفة للقصيدة.
2. Which words rhyme -When two words end with the same sound, they rhyme.
٢- مدى تناغم الكلمات. عندما تنتهي كلمتان في صوت واحد. يكون لهما نفس القافية.
3. Personification - When the poet gives qualities of a person to a thing.
٣- التشخيص/التجسيد. عندما يعطي الشاعر صفات بشرية إلى شيء غير عاقل.

SB Page (66)

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

Rami's eco blog



Hi, my name's Rami. Last year, I watched a documentary(1) about the effects of human(2) activities on the planet. After that, I decided to make some changes(3) in my life because I wanted to be more eco-friendly(4). In the past, I always traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school. It only takes 15 minutes, it's healthy(5), and it's fun!

Before, I never put my trash in the recycling bins and I never thought about if it was recyclable(6) or not. Now, I always look for the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it, because I understand how important it is to reuse(7) the Earth's resources.

Now, I also try to switch off all my tech devices - like my laptop and my games console - when I'm not using them, because I know that this saves energy and that's good for the planet, too.

We can all do things that help in small ways!

What changes have you made to help the planet? Leave a comment below.

١. فيلم وثائقي
٢. بشري
٣. تغيرات
٤. صديق للبيئة
٥. صحي
٦. قابل للتدوير
٧. يعيد استخدام

comment: 23 commens

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. The passage is mainly about a/an ..... يتحدث النص عن .....
   a. letter b. blog c. email d. paragraph
2. How did Ali travel to school? كيف ذهب علي للمدرسة؟
3. Why did Ali look for the right type of recycling bin? لماذا بحث علي عن سلة المهملات المناسبة؟

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. I watched a documentary about ..... شاهدت فيلم وثائقى عن .....
2. I decided to make some changes in life. قررت أن اغير أشياء فى حياتى.
3. I always look for the right type of recycling bin. دائماً ابحث عن السلة المناسبة لوضع القمامة.

Answers:
1. a blog
2. He always traveled to school by bus.
3. Because he understood how important it was to reuse the Earth's resources.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. My father is a great _____. He writes poems.
   a. post b. poet c. poetry d. player
2. "_____" is the value of something.
   a. Word b. Worth c. World d. Ward
3. I watched an interesting _____ about wild animals last night.
   a. documentry b. song c. book d. mobile
4. You should _____ energy. It's very important in our life.
   a. safe b. save c. waste d. dive
5. The trash in the recycling bin is _____. We can use it again.
   a. hard b. recyclable c. soft d. messy
6. The poem consists of three _____.
   a. rooms b. stanzas c. pens d. letters
7. I decided to make some _____ in my life to make it better.
   a. charges b. changes c. devices d. resources
8. Don't throw _____ in the street. Put it in the bin.
   a. plant b. trash c. money d. air
9. My laptop and games console are types of_____devices.
   a. tech b. ancient c. active d. waste

10. We should reuse the Earth's .....
a. changes b. resources c. planets d. ways

11. I enjoy ..... to school. I like riding a bike.
a. cycling b. running c. walking d. eating

12. I turn off the ..... to save water.
a. lap b. tap c. cap d. fun

13. Human activities have a lot of ..... on our planet.
a. offers b. effects c. dolphins d. poets

Expressions & prepositions

14. The dolphin ..... under water.
a. drives b. dives c. cycles d. walks

15. I switch ..... the tech devices when I'm not using them.
a. on b. off c. over d. at

16. I decided ..... be more eco- friendly.
a. at b. to c. for d. of



Language قواعد لغوية

Using conjunctions "and , but & because" استخدام الروابط

- **Conjunctions are words we use to join two parts of a sentence together.**

الروابط هي كلمات لربط جزئين لجملة او كلمتين معا .

and (و)

- **We use it to add information.**

تستخدم (and) لاضافة معلومة.

Ex. I look for the recycling bin and put my trash in it.

but (لكن)

- **We use it to contrast information.** تستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين فكرتين او كلمتين.

Ex. I always traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school.

because (لان)

- **We use it to explain information or give a reason for something.**

تستخدم لتوضيح السبب او لبيان معلومات او تفسير معين

Ex. I went to bed early last night because I was tired.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I switch off my laptop _____ my games console when I'm not using them.
   a. because b. but c. so d. and
2. I decided to make some changes in my life _____ I want to be more eco-friendly.
   a. but b. so c. because d. or
3. I put my trash in the recycling bin _____ I understand how important it is.
   a. because b. so c. but d. or

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. He was rich, _____ he was unhappy.
   a. because b. and c. but d. or
5. She didn't go to school _____ she was ill.
   a. and b. but c. so d. because
6. She made a great meal _____ ate it.
   a. because b. and c. so d. but
7. Ali bought rice _____ pasta from the market.
   a. because b. and c. so d. but
8. Our family didn't go to the beach _____ our car broke down.
   a. and b. because c. so d. but
9. She stayed home _____ she was ill.
   a. because b. and c. but d. so
10. He couldn't get up early _____ he stayed up late.
    a. and b. because c. so d. or
11. I ride my bike. It's healthy _____ fun.
    a. because b. so c. and d. at
12. Plant more trees _____ flowers for the birds and bees.
    a. and b. because c. so d. but
13. This mobile is nice, _____ it is too expensive.
    a. because b. but c. so d. or
14. It's a difficult question, _____ I can answer it.
    a. because b. so c. but d. or
15. My friend was late for the work _____ he got up late.
    a. and b. so c. because d. but

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My laptop ..... (but) electronic devices use a lot of energy.
2. We should plant more trees ..... (but) plants.
3. I switch off electronic devices ..... (but) they use a lot of electricity.
4. I practice very hard ..... (but) I want to win the match.
5. I walk to school ..... (but) my house is not far away.
6. He could ride a bike, ... (because) he couldn't drive a car.
7. He is a good poet ..... (but) he writes good poems.
8. My sister studies hard ..... (but) she wants to be a dentist.

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr is asking Adel about an eco-friendly blog post

Amr : What are you doing?
Adel : I'm writing a blog post.
Amr : ❶ .....?
Adel : It's about how to be eco-friendly.
Amr : ❷ .....?
Adel : You should save energy.
Amr : How can I save energy?
Adel : ❸ .....
Amr : Do you think switching off devices save a lot of energy.
Adel : ❹ .....
Amr : ❺ ..... I'll do that.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I watched a ..... about how to reuse old things and recycle them.
   a. game b. documentary c. view d. laptop
2. A ..... is a group of lines in a poem.
   a. poet b. stanza c. structure d. letter
3. Turn off the taps. We ..... the water you are wasting.
   a. feed b. need c. speed d. try
4. My teacher is kind ..... helpful.
   a. because b. but c. and d. so
5. You should be ..... to save our planet.
   a. eco-friendly b. careless c. dirty d. tired

6. Saving energy is good ..... our planet.
   a. on b. for c. with d. of
7. I decided ..... make some changes in my life.
   a. of b. by c. to d. with
8. I always traveled to school by bus, ... now I ride my bike to school.
   a. because b. but c. so d. that
9. I went to the Red Sea to ..... and see the coral reefs.
   a. cycle b. dive c. drive d. stop
10. I ride my bike to school. It only ..... 15 minutes.
    a. plays b. takes c. stops d. writes

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. throw - Don't - plastic - dive - where - dolphins.

.....

2. wanted - I - be - to - eco-friendly - more

.....

3. always - I - look for - type - the right - of recycling - bin

.....

4 Write a blog post of (80-90) words about: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Things you do to be eco-friendly"



Review on Unit 5

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

drought (n)	جفاف	minerals (n)	معادن
wildfire (n)	حرائق الغابات	eco- friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة
flood (n)	فيضان	layers (n)	طبقات
water scarcity (n)	ندرة المياة	basalt (n)	حجر البازلت
heatstroke (n)	ضربة شمس	hanging basket (n)	اصيص زرع (معلق)
storm (n)	عاصفة	rocks (n)	صخور
hygiene (n)	النظافة الشخصية	resources	موارد/مصادر
transportation (n)	وسائل النقل والمواصلات	cosume (d)	يستهلك
climate change (n)	التغير المناخي	melt (ed)	ينصهر
technologies (n)	تقنيات	form (ed)	يتكون - يشكل
air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء	marble	حجر الرخام
impact (n)	تأثير	sandstone (n)	حجر رملي
affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر	documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي
travel (ed)	يسافر / ينتقل	recyclable (adj)	قابل لاعادة التصنيع
miss (ed)	يفتقد	tech devices (n)	اجهزة إلكترونية
produce (d)	ينتج	worth (adj) (n)	ذو قيمة - مستحق
bird feeder (n)	وعاء لاطعام الطيور	save (d) (v)	يوفر
electronic devices (n)	أجهزة الكترونية		

Language قواعد لغوية

Comparative and Superlative Adjectives صفات المقارنة والتفضيل

- تنقسم الصفات الى قصيرة وطويلة.

من امثلة الصفات القصيرة :

clean	نظيف	green	صديق للبيئة	noisy	صاخب

من امثلة الصفات الطويلة

attractive	جذاب	expensive	غالى الثمن	dangerous	خطير

- نستخدم صيغة المقارنة **Comparative** للمقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين.
- نستخدم صيغة التفضيل **Superlative** للتفضيل بين واحد ومجموعة.
- تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلى:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
short adjective "high"	صفة + er + than "higher than"	the + صفة + est "the highest"
long adjective "dangerous"	more / less + صفة + than (أقل، أكثر)	the most / the least + صفة (الأقل، الأكثر)

توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى:

good	جيد	better than	the best
bad	سىء	worse than	the worst
far	بعيد	farther / further than	the farthest / furthest

Definite and Indefinite Articles أدوات المعرفة والنكرة

Articles (the / a-an) الأدوات

The definite article (the) اداة المعرفة

تستخدم أداة المعرفة (the):

١- قبل الاسم المحدد (شيء ما) والمعرف تماما.

Ex. I bought the mobile we saw last week.

٢- مع الأشياء الفريدة من نوعها في الكون مثل (الأرض - الشمس - القمر - السماء - أسماء البحار والأنهار والمحيطات) .

Ex. The sun is very hot.

The indefinite article (a/an) ادوات النكرة

وهي أدوات تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد.

Ex. He reads a book in the library.

Ex. I saw an elephant in the zoo yesterday.

an

An apple

١- تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت متحرك (a.e.i.o.u) (vowels)

a

a boy

١- تستخدم أمام الاسم المفرد الذي يعد ويبدأ بصوت ساكن :

no article

١- لانستخدم أداة مع : - أسماء العلم (أسماء الأشخاص - أسماء البلاد والقارات - أسماء الأيام والشهور - أسماء المواد الدراسية - أسماء اللغات - أسماء الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة والهوايات والالقاب.

Ahmed - Cairo- Egypt - Africa - Sunday - May - math - Arabic- tennis - reading - Mr Ali

Using conjunctions "and , but & because" استخدام الروابط

- **Conjunctions are words we use to join two parts of a sentence together.**

الروابط هي كلمات لربط جزئين لجملة او كلمتين معا .

and (و)

Ex. He turned on the TV and watched the news.

but (لكن)

Ex. I always traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school.

because (لان)

Ex. I went to bed early because I was tired.

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات الوحدة

Lessons 3, 4

There are many ways to save energy. To save energy at home switch off the lights, TVs, computers and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand-by as this a great way to save energy. To save water, don't spend a long time in the shower. We can recycle old plastic bottles. We can use them to make new things.

Lessons 5, 6

I wanted to be more eco-friendly. I traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school. It only takes 15 minute, it's healthy and fun. I never put my trash in the recycling bin and I never thought about if it was recyclable or not. Now I always look for the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it. Because I understand how important it is to reuse the Earth's resources.

Al-Azhar

We can recycle a lot of things at home. We can recycle plastic we can make a bird feeder from old palstic bottles. We can recycle old paper. We can make new boxes from old paper.

General Exercises Unit 5

From : ayman@student.com

To : mustafa@gmail.com

Subject : how to save energy

Dear Mustafa,

How are you? How are your family? You can save energy in different ways. You can save electricity at home. You should turn off the lights when you aren't using them, you should take short showers at home to save water. Don't leave the electronic devices on stand by because they use a lot of electricity.

Yours

Mustafa

Al Azhar Exercises

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Hatem wants to be _____.

a. lazy b. eco-friendly c. sad d. helpless

2. Hatem has a _____ not a bath to save water.

a. kite b. shower c. bike d. book

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed : What are you reading?

Bassem : ① _____.

Ahmed : What is this book about?

Bassem : ② _____.

Ahmed : Rocks! ③ _____?

Bassem : They are sandstone, marble, and basalt.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Water _____ affects our environment badly.

a. skill b. scarcity c. crop d. fall

2. I think science is more exciting _____ math.

a. that b. the c. then d. than

3. "_____" means that there isn't enough water for everyone.

a. Flood b. Drought c. Crop d. Feeder

4. When you heat ice, it _____.

a. melts b. eats c. designs d. plays

5. Please, switch _____ the lights at night to save electricity.

a. off b. for c. on d. at

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

There are three types of rocks. I read about them today. **They** are basalt, sandstone, and marble. Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface. It's formed from the broken parts of other rocks and material when they press together. The youngest layers of sandstone are at the top. The oldest layers are at the bottom. The Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things like the Sphinx in Giza.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

---

2. Mention two types of rocks.

---

3. Where can you find sandstone?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .

a. books b. rocks c. flowers d. Egyptians

5. The sandstone is found near the Earth's ..... .

a. face b. surface c. water d. wood

5 Reorder the following words to make meaningful sentences:

1. change - The Earth's - Climate - affects - weather. .....
2. grow - They - in - vegetables - garden - the. .....
3. electricity - Making - a lot of- uses - resources - of - planet's - the .....
4. energy - important - Saving - is - for - planet - our. .....

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on: (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Things we can recycle at home"

General Exercises on Unit 5

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Being eco-friendly means taking care of the .....
   a. bus b. environment c. shower d. plastics
2. You should turn off the ..... when you aren't using them.
   a. papers b. glasses c. lights d. planets
3. You should take short ..... to save water.
   a. books b. showers c. taps d. statues
4. You can recycle ..... bottles.
   a. wood b. glass c. plastic d. leather

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Gamal and Hisham are talking about climate change

Gamal : Hello! Hisham. How are you?

Hisham : Hello! Gamal, fine thanks.

Gamal : ① .....?

Hisham : The weather is too hot today.

Gamal : I think climate change is a very big problem.

Hisham : ② .....?

Gamal : We should help to protect the environment.

Hisham : ③ .....

Gamal : You are right. Saving energy is a good idea.

Hisham : ④ .....?

Gamal : You can turn off lights when you aren't using them.

Hisham : ⑤ .....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

drought - hot - warmer - leaves - money

I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is normal for us, but this summer the highest temperature was 46°c. That's about five degrees ① _____ than it normally. My family is having a lot of problems of the ② _____ weather here. Because of the hot weather, there's a ③ _____ in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their ④ _____ are brown.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems facing the world today. Two billion people don't have enough fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change. Water scarcity affects people in different ways.

Farmers can't grow many crops as **they** used to. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it. The biggest impact can be on children who have less time to spend in school. This can be more **dangerous** than for adults.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What's the main idea of the passage?

_____

2. What's the reason for water scarcity?

_____

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

_____

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to _____.

a. children b. farmers c. adults d. problems

5. The biggest impact of water scarcity can be on _____.

a. plants b. children c. countries d. crops

6. The word "**dangerous**" is the opposite of _____.

a. save b. safe c. thief d. bad

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should take short _____ to save water.
   a. poets b. showers c. plants d. taps
2. Old cars _____ a lot of fuel and energy.
   a. save b. consume c. writes d. eats
3. My friend is helpful _____ kind.
   a. but b. because c. and d. so
4. _____ rich should help the poor.
   a. A b. An c. The d. no article
5. People should be _____ to save our planet.
   a. poor b. eco-friendly c. sad d. lazy
6. We add the suffix "_____" to turn the verb "recycle" into adjective.
   a. -less b. -able c. -ness d. -ity
7. You can _____ the alarm to get up early.
   a. say b. set c. sat d. waste
8. A _____ started and burnt all the trees in the forest.
   a. drought b. wildfire c. flood d. rock
9. I think English is the _____ interesting subject.
   a. more b. most c. bad d. worse
10. It was the _____ restaurant. I didn't like it.
    a. worse b. bad c. worst d. more bad

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This statue is _____ (old) statue in the museum.
2. The blue whale is _____ (bigger) animal in the world.
3. Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems in _____ (a) world.
4. He put his book in the bag _____ (but) went to school.

E Writing

7 write an email of 80-90 words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

To your friend Mustafa about saving energy.

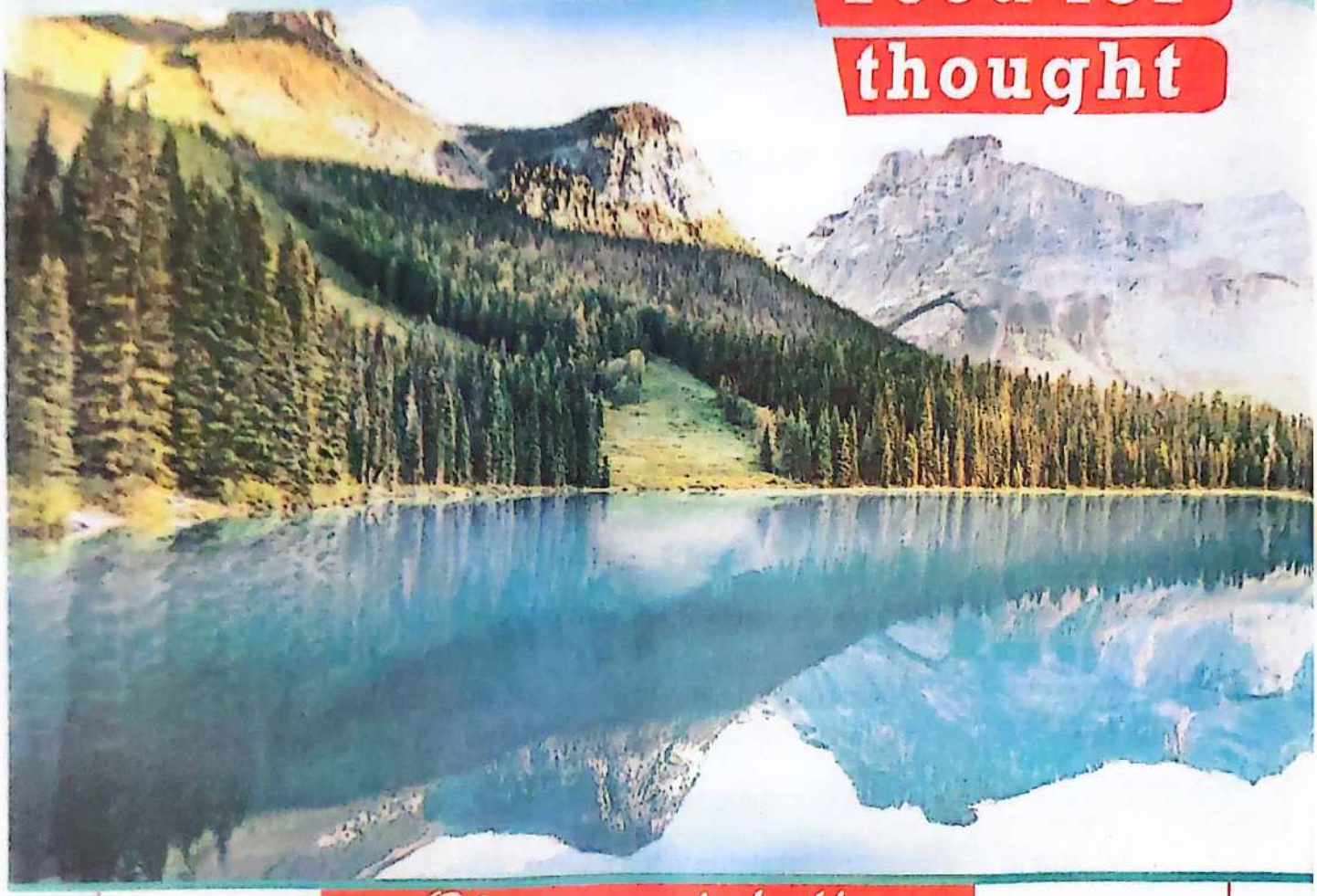
Your name is Ayman and your email address is: Ayman@student.com.

Your friend's email address is mustafa@gmail.com.

Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 6 Food for thought



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

An article about traditional food; A menu; An article about a recipe; The Living Café: a short story

Listening:

Understand descriptions of celebration favorite foods

Speaking:

Discuss food choices; Talk about celebration foods

Language:

Wh-questions in the past simple; Adverbials of time and place

Writing:

A blog post about favorite foods

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

apartment (n)	شقة سكنية	main course (n)	الوجبة الرئيسية
meal (n)	وجبة	starters (n)	مُقبلات
oven (n)	فرن	dessert (n)	تحلية
restaurant (n)	مطعم	special (n)	خاص- مميز
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	delicious (adj)	لذيذ
spices (n)	توابل	waiter (n)	جرسون/نادل
menu (n)	قائمة طعام	serve (d)	يقدم طعام- يخدم

Foods

hummus (n)	سلطة الحمص	chickpea paste (n)	معجون الحمص
Om Ali (n)	أم على (طبق للتحلية)	hawawshi (n)	حواوشي
koshari (n)	كشري	meat (n)	لحمة
sweet potato (n)	بطاطا	chipsi mayai (n)	شيبسي مایاي (أكلة تنزانية)
shawerma (n)	شاورما	fries (n)	بطاطس مقلية
corn-on-the-cob (n)	كوز الذرة	cheese (n)	جبنة
maakouda (n)	المعقودة (أكلة بالمغرب)	pepper (n)	فلفل
tomatoes (n)	طماطم	eggah (n)	عِجّه
cucumber (n)	خيار	basbousa (n)	بسبوسة
fish kebab (n)	كباب السمك	baklawa (n)	بقلاوة
ruz sayadieh (n)	أرز صيادية	falafel (n)	فلافل

Countries & Cities

Tanzania	دولة تنزانيا	Morocco	دولة المغرب
Arusha	مدينة اروشا (تنزانيا)	Agadir	(مدينة أغادير) المغرب
Algeria	دولة الجزائر	Tunisia	دولة تونس

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	warm (adj)	دافئ
unless (conj)	اذا لم	quick (adj)	سريع
order (n / v ed)	أمر - يأمر	pan (n)	مقلاه
service (n)	خدمة	middle east (n)	الشرق الاوسط
sweet shop (n)	محل حلويات	popular (adj)	مشهور - شعبي
taste (n / v / ed)	مذاق - يتذوق	bread (n)	خبز
traditional (n)	تقليدي	bake (d)	يخبز
plate (n)	طبق	arrive (d)	يصل
comfortable (adj)	مريح	boil (ed)	يغلي
Egyptian (n)	مصري	change (n / v ed)	تغيير - يغير
type (n)	نوع	improve (d)	يحسن / يطور

Definitions

apartment	شقة	a set of rooms on one floor where someone lives.
oven	فرن	a piece of equipment that food is cooked inside.
menu	قائمة طعام	a list of food that are available in a restaurant.
starters	مُقبلات	a small amount of food eaten at the start of a meal.
dessert	تحلية	sweet food served after the main part of a meal.

Expressions & Prepositions

it tastes great	مذاقه عظيم	ask to	يطلب من
easy to make	سهل الصنع	tell about	يخبر عن
need to	يحتاج أن	add to	يضيف الي
want to	يريد أن	decide to	يقرر أن
stay for	يمكث لمدة	come back	يعود إلي
invite to	يدعو إلي	pay for	يدفع ثمن
on the menu	في القائمة	come from	يأتي من
make changes	يحدث تغييرات	anyway	على اي حال
at that point	في هذا التوقيت		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
near قريب	close	far بعيد
sell يبيع	advertise	buy يشترى
love يحب	like	hate يكره
small صغير	tiny - little	big كبير
good جيد	great	bad سيىء
healthy صحي	beneficial	unhealthy غير صحى

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	traditional
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	celebration
-er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	starter
-able	تحول الفعل او الاسم إلى صفة	comfortable
-ed	تحول الفعل او الاسم إلى صفة	fried

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
make يصنع	made	made
sell يبيع	sold	sold
know يعرف	knew	known
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
keep يحفظ	kept	kept
bring يحضر	brought	brought

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 take + فترة زمنية + to + inf يستغرق

Ex. It took 3 hours to finish my homework.

2 enjoy, finish, keep + v + ing / n

Ex. I enjoy reading the book.
Ex. I enjoy the weather in Alex.

3 dessert - desert :

• dessert (n) تحلية	• desert (n) صحراء
Ex.: What will you have for dessert?	Ex.: Few plants grow in the desert.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It took Ali 3 hours _____ his homework.
   a. finished b. finish c. to finish d. finishes
2. Omar enjoys _____ in nature.
   a. walks b. walking b. to walk d. walked
3. Wild animals usually live in the _____.
   a. sea b. desert b. river d. dessert
4. We had ice cream as a _____ after lunch.
   a. desert b. dessert b. starter d. course

Reading

SB Page (69)

Food on the Go

استمع إلى النصوص

We asked our readers to tell us about the traditional(1) food that they love. Here's what they said!



Most Egyptians know hawawshi. It is a type(2) of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices(3) inside it. Some people like to add cheese to it too. You bake it in the oven(4) and eat it warm. Delicious(5)! You can also find it in some parts of the Middle East.

Samir, Cairo



Chipsi mayai, which is also sometimes called zege, is a very popular traditional food here in Tanzania. We make it with fries and eggs fried in oil(6). I love it, but I don't think it is a very healthy snack(7), so I don't eat it very often!

Elizabeth, Arusha.

١. تقليدي
٢. نوع
٣. توابل
٤. فرن
٥. لذيذ
٦. زيت
٧. وجبه خفيفة

Maakouda are very popular[8] in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia. We make them with potatoes. We boil the potatoes in hot water, then make them into small balls. Sometimes we put meat, fish, or cheese in them, too. Finally, we fry them in a lot of oil and serve[9] them in a sandwich. They're so good!



Youssef, Agadir

٨. مشهور - شعبي
٩. يخدم - يقدم

Reading Skill **مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)**

1- What is the main idea in the second paragraph?

2- The word popular can be replaced by.....

a. warm b. liked c. probable d. noisy

3- Give words from the passage that mean: old - tasty

Writing Skill **مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)**

1- Hawawshi is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.

- الحواوشى هو نوع من الخبز باللحم والخضروات والتوابل بداخله.

2- Chipsi mayai is a very popular traditional food in Tanzania. - شيبسى مايا (هو طعام تقليدى شائع فى تنزانيا).

3- Maakouda are very popular in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia. - المعقودة منتشرة جدًا فى المغرب والجزائر وتونس.

Answers:

1- Hawawshi is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.

2- b. liked 3- traditional- delicious

Skills

Finding Information in different parts of a text:

- إيجاد المعلومات في أجزاء النص المختلفة

- First, think about the type of information you want to find. Are you looking for a noun or a verb?

- أولاً، فكر في نوع المعلومات التي تريد العثور عليها. هل تبحث عن اسم أم فعل؟

- Next, scan each part of the text. Does it contain key words relating to the information?

- بعد ذلك، قم بقراءة كل جزء من النص سريعا. هل تحتوي على كلمات رئيسية تتعلق بالمعلومات؟

- Also, look at headings or other features (such as the names and locations of the writers) that tell you what each part of the text is about.

- انظر أيضًا إلى العناوين أو الميزات الأخرى (مثل أسماء الكتّاب ومواقعهم) التي تخبرك بموضوع كل جزء من النص.

SB Page (70)

Nile view cafe		
Starters	**Main**	**Desserts**
Special salad (tomatoes, cucumbers, onions, green peppers)	Fish kebabs	Baklawa
	Koshari	Om Ali
Hummus (chickpea paste with bread)	Ruz sayadieh (fish with rice)	Basbousa
Eggah (eggs with onions and tomatoes)	Sayadieh el samak (baked fish with tomatoes)	Chocolate, ice cream

SB Page (70)

Dear Sir or Madam,

My family and I ate at your restaurant(1) last Wednesday. The restaurant is clean and comfortable(2), but unfortunately(3), we did not enjoy our meal(4) very much at all. It took a long time for our starters(5) to arrive. We kept saying to each other: "When did we order(6) our food? I think it was 40 minutes ago!" I ordered a special(7) salad which must be quick and easy to make. After 50 minutes, the waiter(8) brought our starters to us. The starters tasted delicious(9), but then our main courses came about one minute after we finished eating the starters! We didn't like that at all. We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main course(10). When it arrived, there weren't any tomatoes on our plates(11). "Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our plates?" we asked the waiter. He said, "We don't have any tomatoes today." After all of that, we weren't sure(12) if we wanted desserts. But, as it was my daughter's birthday(13), we decided(14) to order them anyway. Five minutes after we ordered, the waiter came back to our table and asked us, "What did you order for dessert(15)?" At that point, we decided to pay for the food we had and leave. I had ordered basbousa and I can also buy that in a sweet shop. So, that's what I did! Your restaurant is a nice place, but I really think that you need to make some changes(16). Our family definitely(17) doesn't want to eat there again unless you improve your service.

Regards,
Randa Al-Katib

١. مطعم
٢. مريح
٣. لسوء الحظ
٤. وجبة
٥. مقبلات
٦. طلبنا
٧. خاص- مميز
٨. جرسون
٩. لذيذ
١٠. الوجبة الرئيسية
١١. أطباق
١٢. متأكدين
١٣. عيد ميلاد
١٤. قرر
١٥. حلويات
١٦. تغيرات
١٧. بالتأكيد

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sarah is trying traditional food for the first time in Cairo

Sarah : This falafel is delicious!
Ahmed : I'm happy to hear that.
Sarah : ❶ ..... ?
Ahmed : It's made of beans.
Sarah : ❷ ..... ?
Ahmed : Yes,there are many falafel shops in Cairo.
Sarah : How much is it?
Ahmed : ❸ .....
Sarah : Tell me about another traditional food.
Ahmed : ❹ .....
Sarah : Koshari! ❺ ..... ?
Ahmed : It's a mix of pasta, rice, and lentils.
Sarah : I want to try it.

2 Read and complete

spices - desserts - delicious- vegetables- koshari

Egyptian food is ❶ ..... and varied. There are many different dishes to try, from meat dishes to sweet ❷ ..... Some of the most popular Egyptian foods include falafel, ❸ ..... and baklawa. Many dishes contain fresh ❹ .....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main .....
   a. course b. dessert c. opening d. starter
2. My family and I ate at your ..... last Wednesday.
   a. list b. restaurant c. starter d. plate
3. We ..... a special salad which must be quick and easy to make.
   a. told b. ordered c. said d. watched
4. What did you order for the .....? - I ordered basbousa.
   a. main course b. dessert c. desert d. starter
5. I live in a big ..... in Cairo .
   a. oven b. apartment c. meal d. meat
6. Unfortunately, we did not enjoy our ..... very much as the food was cold.
   a. meal b. town c. plate d. menu

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. The ..... was very tasty. But the main course wasn't the same.
   a. city b. town c. country d. starter
8. The food ..... great. I think I'll come here again.
   a. touches b. tastes c. tells d. says
9. A ..... is a list of foods in a restaurant .
   a. task b. menu c. river d. native
10. I ..... the bottle with water .
    a. fell b. filled c. failed d. felt
11. My friend lives ..... to the bank .
    a. under b. between c. above d. next
12. John comes ..... England. He is English.
    a. with b. over c. from d. about
13. The opposite of " interesting " is .....
    a. boring b. great c. active d. small
14. "Tasty " and " ....." have the same meaning.
    a. love b. delicious c. sell d. near
15. Salah is a ..... football player.
    a. useless b. tiny c. famous d. unknown
16. Egypt is a great ..... in Africa.
    a. city b. town c. country d. village
17. I'm from Egypt. I'm .....
    a. French b. American c. Egyptian d. Chinese
18. What do you want to ..... from the menu?
    a. city b. order c. country d. drink
19. This restaurant is very ..... with tourists.
    a. popular b. empty c. quiet d. happy
20. This restaurant is ..... We like coming here.
    a. comfortable b. tiring c. noisy d. boring
21. The food on this ..... looks delicious.
    a. cup b. town c. plate d. starter

Expressions & Prepositions

22. I need to ..... my order. Can I have rice instead of pasta?
    a. talk b. change c. eat d. sell
23. Maakouda is very popular ..... Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia.
    a. with b. for c. to d. in
24. It ..... a long time for our starters to arrive.
    a. made b. spent c. took d. had
25. This cafe is a good place but they need to ..... some changes.
    a. take b. make c. do d. call



Language قواعد لغوية

Wh- questions in the past simple

١- الماضي البسيط يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل أي المصدر مضاف اليه (d/ed/ied)

- يضاف (ed) لمعظم الأفعال.
- اذا انتهي الفعل بـ (e) نضع (d)
- اذا انتهي الفعل بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذفها ونضع (ied)

Ex. Adam watched TV yesterday.
Ex. Mariam arrived yesterday.
Ex. They studied English last week.

ويوجد أفعال شاذة مثل :

buy	bought	يشتري
sell	sold	يبيع
cut	cut	يقطع
write	wrote	يكتب

ملاحظه هامة :

يكون شكل (verb to be) في الماضي كالاتي:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد ..... was / wasn't
We / You / they / اسم جمع ..... were / weren't

Ex. She was tired.
Ex. They were at school.

٢- يتم نفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't + inf) المصدر بدون اضافات

Ex. Adam sent the letter to Suzy.
Ex. Adam didn't send the letter to Suzy.

٣- في حالة تكوين السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى (هل) وتكون الأجابة بـ (Yes / No) يكون الشكل كالأتي

Did + فاعل + مصدر .....?
Was / were + فاعل + صفة .....?

Ex. Did he go to the bank yesterday? - Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.
Ex. Were you absent yesterday ? - Yes, I was . / No, I wasn`t.

أداة استفهام + did + فاعل + مصدر.....?

Ex. Where did you live? - I lived in Minia.
Ex. How did they go to hospital ? - They went to hospital on foot.
Ex. Why was he happy? - Because he bought a car.
Ex. What did you see at the park ? - I saw my friends.
Ex. When were you absent ? - I was absent yesterday.
Ex. Who did you go to school with ? - I went with my sister

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. **A:** ..... did you go to that restaurant? **B:** Last week.
   a. Where b. What c. When d. How
2. Why ..... you stay for so long? - The food wasn't ready.
   a. do b. did c. does d. has
3. ..... much did they pay for the meal?
   a. What b. When c. Where d. How
4. ..... did you invite to the birthday party?
   a. How b. Who c. When d. Where
5. Where did she ..... in the restaurant?
   a. sat b. sits c. sit d. sitting

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. How ..... your weekend?
   a. did b. does c. was d. do
7. When did you have your last math lesson? - We ..... it at 2 o'clock.
   a. had b. have c. will have d. has
8. How did you go to school? - I ..... there by car.
   a. go b. going c. will go d. went
9. No, he didn't ..... Aswan last year.
   a. visit b. visited c. go d. went
10. When I was young, I always ..... football.
    a. play b. plays c. playing d. played
11. ..... you ready for the exam last week?
    a. Did b. Were c. Do d. Are
12. How did you ..... when you saw the lion yesterday?
    a. feel b. felt c. feels d. feeling
13. What did Adam ..... when he arrived?
    a. did b. doing c. does d. do
14. When ..... Dina's birthday?
    a. do b. did c. was d. does
15. I ..... my aunt a week ago.
    a. visited b. visit c. visiting d. would visit
16. We ..... an interesting film last night.
    a. watch b. watched c. have watched d. watches
17. They ..... attend the party last month.
    a. won't b. didn't c. wasn't d. don't
18. They came to my birthday party and ..... me nice presents.
    a. gives b. were giving c. have given d. gave

3. I don't like pizza ..... all.
   a. on b. for c. at d. in
4. I live in a big ..... in Cairo .
   a. oven b. apartment c. river d. mountain
5. Breakfast, lunch and dinner are the main ..... of the day.
   a. meals b. ingredients c. waiters d. hobbies.
6. Tomatoes, cucumbers and onions are the main ..... of this salad.
   a. ovens b. ingredients c. cookies d. courses
7. Doing sports is .....
   a. nasty b. quiet c. unhealthy d. healthy
8. I want to ..... my birthday with my friends.
   a. celebrate b. boil c. order d. serve
9. They bake the hawawshi in the ..... and eat it warm.
   a. cook b. tank c. fridge d. oven
10. To make maakouda, ... the potatoes in hot water then make them into small balls.
    a. add b. boil c. fry d. bake

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When did you ..... (traveled) to Cairo?
2. How ..... (do) you go to the park yesterday?
3. What ..... (do) you have for lunch yesterday?
4. When ..... (does) Dina's birthday?

5 Write a paragraph of (80 - 90) words on:

"Your favorite food"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية

- What's your favorite food?
- Where did you get it from?
- What's your favorite dessert?
- What flavor do you like?

- هذه الجمل تساعدك في كتابة الموضوع

- My favorite food is pizza.
- I get it from .....
- My favorite dessert is .....
- My favorite flavor is .....

Lessons 3&4

SB pages - WB page -

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

recipe (n.)	وصفة طعام	festival (n.)	مهرجان
research (n.)	بحث علمي	celebration dish (n.)	طبق يتم عمله في الاحتفالات
task (n.)	مهمة عمل	tasty (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
famous (adj.)	مشهور	opportunity (n.)	فرصة
ingredients (n.)	مكونات	grilled (adj.)	مشوي
large-scaled fish	سمكة قشرية كبير الحجم	serve (d)	يقدم الطعام
native (adj)	اصلي		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

language (n)	لغة	pudding (n)	حلوى من الدقيق والحليب
country (n)	دولة/بلد	dried (adj)	مجفف
river fish (n)	سمكة تعيش في النهر	coin (n)	عملة
restaurant (n)	مطعم	spices (n)	توابل
card (n)	بطاقة/كارت	lamb (n)	لحم الضأن
vacation season (n)	موسم الأجازة	longevity (n)	طول العمر
Christmas (n)	رأس السنة الميلادية	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
fried (adj)	مقلي	dessert (n)	حلوى/طعام التحلية
boiled (adj)	مسلوق/مغلي	circle (d)	يضع دائرة حول
chocolate cake (n)	تورتة الشيكولاتة	underline (d)	يضع خطا تحت
pancake (n)	فطيرة	highlight (ed)	يبرز/يوضح
syrup (n)	شراب	include (d)	يشمل/يتضمن
noodles (n)	مكرونة رفيعة	select (ed)	يختار/ينتقي
cylinder shape (n)	شكل اسطواني	pick (ed)	يختار
leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر	pour (ed)	يصب
snow (n)	جليد/ثلج	roll (ed)	يبرم/يلفّ
branch (n)	غصن/فرع	decorate (d)	يزين
barramundi (n)	سمكة البارموندي	believe (d)	يصدق

Expressions & Prepositions

it's called	يسمى	go on the internet	يتصل بالانترنت
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	talk about	يتحدث عن
make notes	يقوم بعمل ملاحظات	refer to	يشير إلى
It's a good opportunity to	إنها فرصة جيدة ان	(be) filled with	مملوء بـ
I'd prefer to	أفضل ان	in + اسم لغة	باللغة الـ.....
look like	يشبه	roll (sth) into	يلف (شيء) على شكل ...
do a search	يبحث/يقوم بعملية البحث	cover (sth) in	يغطي شيئا بـ
decide on	يحدد/يختار	decorate (sth) with	يزين شيئا بـ

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
famous مشهور	well-known	unknown غير معروف
tasty شهى	yummy	tasteless بلا طعم
native اصلى	original	foreign اجنبي
include يشمل	contain	exclude يستبعد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-an	تحول إسم المكان إلى جنسية	Australian
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	interesting
-tion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	description
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	finally
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	decoration

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
come يأتي	came	come
mean يعني	meant	meant
eat يأكل	ate	eaten
think يعتقد	thought	thought
write يكتب	wrote	written

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 recipe / prescription

- **recipe** وصفة طعام

Ex. She followed the recipe to make the chocolate cake.

- **prescription** وصفة طبية

Ex. The doctor wrote a prescription for my cold.

2 (be) easy to + من السهل أن : فعل بالمصدر

- **(be) easy to +** من السهل أن : فعل بالمصدر

Ex. The recipe for this dish is easy to follow.

3 taste / tasty / tasteful

- **taste (v)** يتذوق/له طعم

Ex. I can't taste the soup. It's too hot. يتذوق

Ex. This syrup tastes too sweet. له طعم

- **tasty (adj)** لذيذ الطعم (طعام)

Ex. She cooks very tasty dishes.

- **tasteful (adj)** ذو ذوق راقي/حسن الذوق

Ex. Your office has very tasteful decorations.

4 search / research

- **search (n.)** عملية البحث عن شيء

Ex. I did a search for famous dishes.

- **research** بحث علمي وهو اسم غير معدود

Ex. Scientists did a lot of research on the causes of cancer.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mom got the _____ and made a nice dish.
   a. recipe b. restart c. tasty d. scaled
2. It isn't not easy _____ the answer.
   a. finds b. to find c. found d. to finds
3. The pizza is _____. I liked it.
   a. taste b. tasteful c. tasty d. tasteless

Reading

SB Page (72)

استمع إلى النصوص

• **Listen to Farah talking about researching a recipe. Then look at the recipe card and correct the mistakes on it.**

Recipe

Name of the dish: Barramundi
Origin of name : Australian
Ingredients: Chicken, tomatoes.
How is it cooked? Grilled

Mom : What are you doing, Farah?

Farah : A research task(1) for school.

Mom : That's an interesting picture. What is it?

Farah : It's called Barramundi. It's a river fish(2) from Australia.



Mom : Where does the name come from?

Farah : It's from a native(3) Australian language and means "large-scaled (4) river fish".

Mom : So, the name describes(5) what it is.

Farah : Yes, and you can eat it in nearly every restaurant(6) in the country. People usually eat it with tomatoes and potatoes.

Mom : How did you do your research?

Farah : First, I decided on(7) a country.

Mom : And you picked Australia.

Farah : Yes, I didn't know anything about Australian food so I thought it would be interesting. Once I'd decided on the country, I went on the internet(8) and did a search(9) for famous dishes(10). I looked at a few different websites so that I could check(11) the information. I then looked at the questions from the project and tried to find the answers. The next thing I did was make notes(12). Then, I selected(13) the information from my notes that I wanted to include(14) in my project. Finally, I wrote the recipe card(15). Do you want to see it?

Mom : Yes, please!

١. مهمة بحثية
٢. سمكة نهرية
٣. أصلي/محلي
٤. كبيرة الحجم
٥. يصف
٦. مطعم
٧. اخترتُ
٨. دخلت على النترنت
٩. قمت بالبحث
١٠. أطباق مشهورة
١١. يفحص
١٢. يعمل ملاحظات
١٣. اخترت
١٤. يشمل
١٥. بطاقة الوصفة

Listening

SB Page (74)

SB Page (74)

Narrator :1

Chinese boy:

At New Year in my country, we have a very big festival(1). At this time of year, we always cook special noodles(2) which are very, very long. In Chinese(3), this dish is called "longevity(4) noodles". It's a dish that we believe can help you to live a very long life! We say if you eat very long noodles at New Year, your life will be very long in the future!

Narrator :2

French girl

The Bûche de Noël is a traditional(5) cake that we bake for Christmas in my country. We roll the cake into(6) a cylinder shape(7), then cover(8) it in chocolate. We also often decorate (9) it with sweets which look like(10) leaves(11), or we put sugar on the cake to look like snow (12), so the cake seems like the branch of a tree(13) in winter!

Narrator 3:

Ethiopian boy:

My favorite celebration dish(14) is called yebeg wot. It's a delicious meat dish that we cook during the vacation season(15). We make it with lamb(16) onions, tomatoes, garlic, butter, and special spices(17). In my family, my grandma is the person who usually cooks the yebeg wot. She also bakes a type of bread called injera, which she serves(18) next to it.

Narrator 4:

British girl

In my country, there's a popular celebration dish called Christmas pudding(19). It's a dessert(20) which has lots of dried(21) fruit, sugar, and spices in it. We boil it for a long time, then serve it hot with a sweet sauce. Sometimes you can find a coin(22) in your Christmas Pudding! People bake a coin into the pudding and the person who finds it will have good luck!

١. مهرجان
٢. مكرونة خاصة
٣. في اللغة الصينية
٤. طول العمر
٥. تقليدي
٦. يلف.. على شكل
٧. شكل اسطواني
٨. يغطي
٩. يزين
١٠. يشبه
١١. أوراق الشجر
١٢. الثلج
١٣. فرع الشجرة
١٤. طبق احتفالي
١٥. موسم الأجازة
١٦. لحم الضأن
١٧. توابل
١٨. يقدم (طعام)
١٩. حلوى عيد الميلاد
٢٠. حلوى
٢١. مجفف
٢٢. عملة

Listening

SB Page (75)

SB Page (75)

During the month of Ramadan in Egypt, Egyptians often eat a special(1) dessert(2) called(3) qatayef with their families. Qatayef are a type of(4) sweet pancake(5) filled with(6) nuts, or sometimes chocolate, which are then put into oil(7) and fried. Once the qatayef are ready to eat(8) and on the table, people pour(9) syrup(10) made from sugar over(11) them. I like to make qatayef at home; they taste(12) much better(13) than the ones you buy from shops.



١. مميز
٢. حلوى
٣. تسمى
٤. نوع من
٥. فطيرة حلوة
٦. مملوء بـ
٧. موضوع بالزيت
٨. جاهز للأكل
٩. يصب
١٠. شراب
١١. فوق
١٢. له مذاق
١٣. أفضل كثيرا

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Judy and Leila are talking about their favorite dish.

Judy : Hi Leila. What's your favorite dish?

Leila : ❶ .....

Judy : ❷ .....?

Leila : The ingredients of koshari are rice, pasta, lentils and tomatoes.

Judy : ❸ .....?

Leila : For dessert, I have rice pudding.

Judy : Do you know the recipe?

Leila : ❹ .....

Judy : Let's cook this dish together.

Leila : ❺ .....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1.I found a very easy ..... for homemade pizza online.

a. search b. prescription c. recipe d. task

2. Your _____ today is to clean the kitchen, and your brother will water the flowers.
   a. task b. syrup c. pancake d. pudding
3. Koshari and Ful Medames are very _____ dishes in Egypt.
   a. talented b. boiled c. dried d. famous
4. The cake needs several _____, like flour, butter, and sugar.
   a. ingredients b. guests c. celebrations d. recipes
5. At this hotel, they _____ lunch at 4 pm.
   a. save b. serve c. surf d. sign
6. Sham El-Nessim is a popular _____ that takes place in the spring every year.
   a. pasta b. decoration c. noodle d. festival
7. The spaghetti was very _____ and the children liked it very much.
   a. tasteful b. careful c. tasty d. friendly
8. We have _____, fried and boiled chicken. Which of them do you like?
   a. grilled b. dried c. scaled d. interested
9. The vacation _____ is the busiest time of the year for travel.
   a. reason b. cylinder c. season d. longevity
10. My favorite dish for dessert is _____.
   a. noodles b. pancakes c. festivals d. cards
11. I tried _____ fruit. It was so delicious.
   a. grilled b. fried c. cooked d. dried
12. Most bottles and candles have a _____ shape.
   a. cylinder b. formal c. final d. foreign
13. After lunch, we had chocolate cake _____ for dessert.
   a. noodle b. opportunity c. pudding d. lamb
14. Ahmed Mekky is a famous actor. "Famous" is the opposite of _____.
   a. popular b. unknown c. unsafe d. delicious
15. We add the suffix "_____" to the word Australia to get the name of the nationality.
   a. -y b. -an c. -less d. -full

Expressions & Prepositions

16. The child _____ the pancake in sugar before he ate it.
   a. baked b. filled c. covered d. decided
17. I need to _____ a search online for the best restaurants in town.
   a. make b. do c. take d. get

18. We need to do ..... on pollution for our school project.

a. task b. research c. search d. dessert

19. He decided ..... a place to spend the weekend.

a. on b. in c. to d. at

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. in china we always cook special noodles on weekends

2. what s your favorite celebration dish on christmas in egypt



Language قواعد لغوية

Adverb of time and place عبارات ظرفية تدل على الزمان والمكان

- هي عبارات قصيرة تدل على توقيت ومكان وقوع الحَدَث أو مكان وجود شيء أو شخص. ومن أمثلة هذه العبارات:

Adverbials of time	ظروف الزمان
at this time of year	في هذا الوقت من العام
during the vacation season	أثناء موسم الأجازة
for a long time	لمدة طويلة
at new year	عند بداية العام الجديد
yesterday / tomorrow	بالأمس / غدا
in the morning	في الصباح
Adverbials of place	**ظروف المكان**
next to / into / on / beside	بجوار / داخل / على / بجوار
inside / outside	داخل / خارج
above / under	فوق / أسفل
here / there	هنا / هناك
at home	بالمنزل
upstairs / downstairs	في الطابق العلوي / السفلي

وتأتي هذه العبارات الظرفية في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

Ex. At this time of year, we always go on holiday.

Ex. In Britain, people bake a coin into the pudding.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. _____ the month of Ramadan in Egypt, Egyptians often eat a special dessert called qatayef.
   a. Soon b. During c. Between d. When
2. Qatayef are a type of sweet pancake filled with nuts, which are then put _____ oil and fried.
   a. beside b. next c. outside d. into
3. Once the qatayef are ready to eat and _____ the table, people pour syrup made from sugar over them.
   a. on b. under c. there d. here
4. I like to make qatayef _____; they taste much better than the ones you buy from shops.
   a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. at home d. over there

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. You can't park your car _____. It's a "No parking" area.
   a. after b. during c. here d. before
6. When is the next meeting? - _____
   a. Tomorrow b. Yesterday c. Into the office d. Inside the park
7. When did you last see your best friend?
   a. At school b. At the cinema c. Downstairs d. Last Friday
8. We spent our last weekend _____.
   a. on Christmas b. in Alexandria c. after school d. into the pudding
9. The City Center Mall is located _____ the river.
   a. when b. near c. beside d. during
10. My sister will start working _____ the bank next month.
    a. during b. in c. after d. above
11. Do you live here? – No, I live _____
    a. there b. over c. now d. then
12. There were two dishes _____ the table, but she took only one.
    a. next b. during c. when d. on
13. I was tired, so I fell asleep _____ the film.
    a. during b. on c. while d. from
14. Mom cooked some raisins _____ the pancake, which made it very delicious.
    a. from b. between c. into d. near

15. The women's bathroom is ..... there.
a. soon b. over c. between d. during
16. The children's bedroom is ..... .
a. upstairs b. into the pudding
c. during the month d. after the film
17. The post office is ..... the bank and the school.
a. next b. soon c. between d. when
18. My house is ..... to the new park.
a. tomorrow b. next b. beside d. inside
19. I didn't see my friend Ali ..... a long time.
a. into b. when c. before d. for

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. The bank is over ..... (here).
2. ..... (soon) the storm, my car broke down.
3. I went to Cairo ..... (tomorrow).
4. There is a bank ..... (over) the hospital and the school.
5. Let's go ..... (beside) .It's hot.
6. We go to the club ..... (ever) day.
7. We have beans and eggs ..... (on) the morning.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about how often you did something:

• السؤال والجواب عن عدد مرات فعلك لشئ:

Question	Answer
- What's your favorite Egyptian food? ما هي الأكلة المصرية المفضلة لديك؟	- My favorite Egyptian food is fish. الأكلة المصرية المفضلة لديّ هي السمك
- How is it served? كيف يتم تقديمه؟	- It's sometimes grilled, fried, or cooked. أحيانا يكون مشوي أو مقلي او مطبوخ
- Where do you eat it? أين تتناوله؟	- I eat it at home or in a restaurant. أتناوله في المنزل أو في مطعم.
Do you eat it with something else? هل تتناوله مع شيء آخر؟	- I eat it with rice and salad. أتناوله مع الارز والسلاطة.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher and a student are talking about famous foods around the world:

Teacher : Today, we're going to learn about famous foods from around the world. What's your favorite food?"

Ahmed : ① .....

Teacher : Great! I like pizza, too. ② .....?

Ahmed : Pizza is very popular in Italy and many other countries.

Teacher : ③ .....?

Ahmed : Flour, tomato sauce, sugar, water and salt.

Teacher : Can you tell us why pizza is a popular food?

Ahmed : ④ .....

Teacher : Very good Ahmed. Thank you very much.

Ahmed : ⑤ ....., sir.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

dessert - at - recipe - on - ingredients

I like rice pudding very much. The ① _____ for this traditional dessert is simple. The ② _____ include rice, milk, and sugar. This ③ _____ is often served ④ _____ all occasions. It's very delicious.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother ..... the cake with cream and nuts.

a. grilled b. fried c. decorated d. poured

2. I _____ on the internet to find information about my school project.

a. went b. climbed c. skipped d. made

3. English is a very popular _____ in many countries all over the world.

a. ingredient b. dessert c. pudding d. language

4. Dr. Ahmed Zewail was a very _____ scientist all over the world.

a. delicious b. famous c. scaled d. grilled

5. The waiter ..... hot water over the coffee grounds to make a delicious cup of coffee.

a. picked b. underlined c. poured d. highlighted

6. As it was very cold outside I stayed home in the warm ..... the fireplace.

a. inside b. beside c. next d. after

7. We usually go on vacation ..... the summer.

a. under b. upstairs c. next to d. during

8. Let's spend the afternoon ..... . We could go to the cinema or the club.

a. indoors b. inside c. outdoors d. beside

9. It's usually very hot ..... that time of the year.

a. while b. at c. of d. when

10. The cat is sitting ..... there, on the couch.

a. over b. here c. for d. where

4 Write a paragraph of (80 - 90) words on:

"Your favorite dessert"

Lessons 5&6

SB pages 78 - 79

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

bloom (n)	فترة تفتيح الزهور	container (n)	وعاء
coffee grounds	بقايا القهوة	compost (n)	سماد عضوى
local park (n)	حديقة محلية	café (n)	مقهى
plastic straw (n)	شفاطة (أنبوب بلاستيكى)	ceiling (n)	سقف مبنى
waste (n)	نفايات / فضلات	creamy (adj)	دَسِم (به قشطة)
recycled (adj)	مُعاد تصنيعه	herbs (n)	أعشاب
cold (adj)	بارد	salty (adj)	مالح
crispy (adj)	مقرمش	soft (adj)	ناعم/طرى
hot (adj)	حار	sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	notice (d)	يلاحظ

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

استمع إلى المفردات

coffee beans (n)	حبوب القهوة	strawberry (n)	فراولة
roof (n)	سطح	bright (adj)	لامع/ساطع
excited (adj)	متحمس	salad (n)	سلطة
fresh (adj)	طازج	fries (n)	بطاطس مقلية
coffee cup (n)	فنجان من القهوة	cheesecake (n)	كيكة الجبنه
olive oil (n)	زيت الزيتون	dishes (n)	وجبات/أطباق
bun (n)	كعكة	grilled (adj)	مشوى
tube (n)	أنبوبة	leftover (adj)	باقى/متبقى
nearby (adj)	قريب	taste (n)	طعم/مذاق
smell (n)	رائحة	perfect (adj)	مثالى

Definitions

compost	سماد عضوى	old plant material used to grow new plants
coffee grounds	بقايا القهوة (تفل)	the leftover part of coffee beans
straw	ماصة/شفاطة	a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through
recycled	معاد تدويره	used again in a different way
waste	نفايا/بقايا	something not wanted or no longer used

Expressions & Prepositions

environmentally friendly	صديق للبيئة	in bloom	فى فترة التزهير
look more closely	ينظر عن قرب	on the ground	على الأرض
make no waste	لا يصدر عنه بقايا / نفايات	set up	يؤسس/ ينشأ
a bit unhealthy	غير صحى قليل	pick up	يلتقط
a few weeks later	بعد بضعة اسابيع	light up	يشعل / يضئ
in a different way	بطريقة مختلفة	walk through	يسير عبر
in return	فى المقابل	on the roof	على السطح
light up	يضىء - ينير	good for	جيد لـ

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
possible ممكن	probable	impossible مستحيل
nearby قريب	near - close	far - remote بعيد
popular مشهور	famous	unpopular غير مشهور

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	creamy - crispy دسم/مقرمش
-ence	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	difference إختلاف
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	recycled معاد تصنيعه

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
hurt يؤذي	hurt	hurt
give يعطي	gave	given
hang يعلق	hung	hung
bring يحضر	brought	brought
pay يدفع	paid	paid

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 roof / ceiling :

- **roof** سطح المبنى (من الخارج)

Ex.: I see a great view from the roof of our building.

- **ceiling** سقف المبنى (من الداخل)

Ex. In my room, I have a ceiling fan.

2 café - coffee

- **café** مقهى (مكان)

Ex.: I meet my friends at the café.

- **coffee** قهوة - مشروب

Ex. I drink coffee in the morning.

3 person/ someone

الضمائر التى تعود على هذه الكلمات تكون جمع لاننا لا نعرف جنس المتحدث.

Ex.: The person, who I met, was sad. They were crying.

Reading

SB Page (76)

استمع إلى النص

The Living Café

ا. زهار
٢. وعاء
٣. نفايات
٤. ماصة بلاستيكية
٥. البيئة

"What's that?" asked Magdy.

"It's a coffee cup," said Sami. "And look, there's another over there."



Magdy and Sami were in their local park. It was a beautiful day and the flowers were in bloom(1), but everywhere they looked there were used cups, plastic straws, and old food containers(2). "Most of this trash comes from a nearby café," said Magdy. "Why don't we set up a café that makes almost no waste(3)?"

"No waste? How is that possible?"

"Well, take this coffee cup. Next time the person who used it wants a coffee, they can bring their own cup to the café. In return, they pay less for their coffee."That's a good idea."

"And instead of plastic straws(4), our café can give paper straws that don't hurt the environment(5)." Sami's eyes lit up. "There are ways to reuse waste, too. Think of all

those coffee grounds we can use them as compost[6] to grow food. "Food that we serve in the café!

٦. سماد (عضوى)
٧. صديقة للبيئة
٨. يلاحظ
٩. مكونات

The two friends were excited. They talked about their ideas all the way home.

Soon, Magdy and Sami bought an old building near the park. They cleaned it and painted it bright colors with environmentally friendly[7] paint. They put in recycled glass windows and used old pieces of wood to make tables and chairs. They also hung lots of plants from the ceiling. On the roof, was a little garden for growing herbs, fruit, and vegetables.

A few weeks later, The Living Café opened. It was quiet at first, but then people started to notice[8] it. They liked the way they could help save the planet with their morning coffee! More people came for lunch, and said the food tasted delicious and very fresh. They were excited to hear that some of the ingredients[9] grew on the roof of the café. The Living Café quickly became the most popular café near the park.

One day, Magdy and Sami walked through the park again. This time, there weren't any used coffee cups on the ground. There were a few straws, but they were paper. Magdy picked one up and put it in the bin.

"Every little act helps!" he said, smiling.

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Magdy and Sami were in their local .....

a. hospital b. school c. park d. station

2. What did Magdy and Sami use coffee grounds for?

3. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. The two friends looked more closely at the trash. - نظر الأصدقاء الاثنين إلى القمامة عن قرب.
2. They can bring their own cup to the café. - يمكنهم أحضار الفنجان الخاص بهم للمقهى.
3. They also hung lots of plants from ceiling. - قاموا أيضًا بتعليق النباتات من السقف.

Answers:

1- b. park 2- They used coffee grounds as a compost for growing food.

3. Magdy and Sami were able to help the environment.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hanan is asking Mona about her favorite food

Hanan : Hi Mona. How are you?

Mona : Hi Hanan. I'm fine, thank you.

Hanan : ① .....?

Mona : My favorite food is burger.

Hanan : Burger! ② .....?

Mona : No, it isn't. It's a bit unhealthy.

Hanan : What about you?

Mona : ③ .....

Hanan : Salad is healthy. ④ .....?

Mona : I like it with cucumber, onion, and cheese.

Hanan : What's your favorite dessert?

Mona : ⑤ .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

environment - straws - reuse - compost - roof

Magdy and Sami are friends. They were in their local park. They wanted to set up a café with no waste. There are ways to ① ..... waste. Instead of plastic ② ..... the café can use paper straws that don't hurt the ③ .....,
They can use the coffee grounds to use them as ④ ....., to grow food

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. We use a food ..... to keep our food during the picnic.

   a. trash b. container c. ground d. flower

2. I like to eat ..... snacks like chips.

   a. soft b. crispy c. ugly d. dirty

3. My mother puts a lot of salt in the dish. It's too .....

   a. creamy b. crispy c. salty d. sweet

4. My friends volunteered in the local _____ to plant more trees.
   a. cinema b. park c. hospital d. station
5. It was a beautiful day and the flowers were in _____.
   a. groom b. bloom c. broom d. food
6. He looked up at the _____ of the room while thinking about the problem .
   a. ceiling b. roof c. soil d. trash
7. My father _____ up a new café in our town.
   a. made b. got c. had d. set
8. I _____ my father's picture on the wall.
   a. took b. hurt c. light d. hung
9. I like salad very much. It's my favorite _____.
   a. fish b. dish c. paper d. subject
10. I like cheesecake. It's so _____.
    a. bad b. ugly c. delicious d. dirty
11. Coffee _____ are the leftover part of coffee beans.
    a. flowers b. grounds c. cups d. bags
12. A " _____ " means a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through .
    a. dish b. chair c. straw d. table
13. A " _____ " is an old plant material used to grow new plants.
    a. flower b. ground c. compost d. company
14. A lot of people usually have drinks and eat meals at _____.
    a. hospitals b. cafés c. markets d. mosques
15. My sister always buys _____ at the bakery.
    a. pens b. buns c. books d. bins
16. There was a light _____ from the ceiling.
    a. inviting b. hanging c. throwing d. talking
17. My little brother _____ his finger with a knife.
    a. picked b. ate c. hurt d. heard
18. I like fries, they are very _____.
    a. creamy b. crispy c. dirty d. soft

Review on Unit 6

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

apartment (n)	شقة سكنية	dessert (n)	تحلية
meal (n)	وجبة	special (n)	خاص- مميز
oven (n)	فرن	waiter (n)	جرسون/نادل
restaurant (n)	مطعم	serve (d)	يقدم طعام- يخدم
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	chickpea paste (n)	معجون الحمص
spices (n)	توابل	chipsi mayai (n)	شيبسي مايا (أكلة تنزانية)
menu (n)	قائمة طعام	fries (n)	بطاطس مقلية
sweet potato (n)	بطاطا	eggah (n)	عِجَه
tomatoes (n)	طماطم	basbousa (n)	بسبوسة
cucumber (n)	خيار	baklawa (n)	بقلاوة
fish kebab (n)	كباب السمك	falafel (n)	فلافل
bloom (n)	فترة تفتيح الزهور	container (n)	وعاء
coffee grounds	بقايا القهوة	compost (n)	سماد عضوى
local park (n)	حديقة محلية	café (n)	مقهى
plastic straw (n)	شفاطة (أنبوب بلاستيكى)	ceiling (n)	سقف مبنى
waste (n)	نفايات /فضلات	creamy (adj)	دَسِم (به قشطة)
recycled (adj)	مُعاد تصنيعه	herbs (n)	أعشاب
crispy (adj)	مقرمش	salty (adj)	مالح
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	soft (adj)	ناعم/طرى
recipe (n.)	وصفة طعام	sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق
research (n.)	بحث علمي	notice (d)	يلاحظ
task (n.)	مهمة عمل	festival (n.)	مهرجان
ingredients (n.)	مكونات	celebration dish (n.)	طبق يتم عمله في الاحتفالات
large-scaled fish	سمكة قشرية كبير الحجم	tasty (adj.)	لذيذ الطعم
native (adj)	اصلى	opportunity (n.)	فرصة
main course (n)	الوجبة الرئيسية	grilled (adj.)	مشوي
starters (n)	مُقبلات		



Language قواعد لغوية

Wh- questions in the past simple

١- الماضي البسيط يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل أي المصدر مضاف اليه (d/ed/ied)

- يضاف (ed) لمعظم الأفعال.
- اذا انتهي الفعل بـ (e) نضع (d)
- اذا انتهي الفعل بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن نحذفها ونضع (ied)

Ex. Adam watched TV yesterday.

Ex. They studied English last week.

ويوجد افعال شاذة مثل :

buy	bought	يشتري
sell	sold	يبيع

٢- يتم نفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't + inf) المصدر بدون اضافات

Ex. Adam sent the letter to Suzy. Ex. Adam didn't send the letter to Suzy.

٣ - في حالة تكوين السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد بمعنى (هل) وتكون الأجابة بـ (Yes / No) يكون الشكل كالآتي

Did + فاعل + مصدر .....?

Was / were + فاعل + صفة .....?

أداة استفهام + did + فاعل + مصدر.....?

Ex. Where did you live? - I lived in Minia.

Ex. How did they go to hospital ? - They went to hospital on foot.

Adverb of time and place عبارات ظرفية تدل على الزمان والمكان

- هي عبارات قصيرة تدل على توقيت ومكان وقوع الحَدَث أو مكان وجود شيء أو شخص. ومن أمثلة هذه العبارات:

Adverbials of time	ظروف الزمان
at this time of year	في هذا الوقت من العام
during the vacation season	أثناء موسم الأجازة
for a long time	لمدة طويلة
at new year	عند بداية العام الجديد
yesterday / tomorrow	بالأمس / غدا
in the morning	في الصباح
Adverbials of place	**ظروف المكان**
next to / into / on / beside	بجوار / داخل / على / بجوار
inside / outside	داخل / خارج
above / under	فوق / أسفل
here / there	هنا / هناك
at home	بالمنزل
upstairs / downstairs	في الطابق العلوي / السفلي

Paragraphs& Emails

Lessons 1&2

My favorite food is pizza. I love the melted cheese very much. I usually get pizza from my favorite local pizza shop. Sometimes, I make pizza at home with my family. It's always fun to experiment with different toppings and sauces. My favorite dessert is ice cream. My favorite flavors are chocolate, vanilla, and strawberry. I usually eat ice cream after dinner. Sometimes, I get ice cream cones from the ice cream shop.

Lessons 3&4

My favorite dessert is chocolate cake. It is soft, sweet, and full of rich chocolate flavor. I love the way it melts in my mouth. Sometimes, I enjoy it with a spoonful of vanilla ice cream on the side. The cold ice cream mixes perfectly with the warm cake. I also like to add some raisins on top for fun. Whenever there is a birthday or a special occasion, chocolate cake is always there. It makes me happy and brings back good memories. Eating a slice of chocolate cake is like having a little piece of joy!

Al Azhar Exercises

My favorite dish is koshari. It's a delicious Egyptian meal with rice, pasta, lentils, and crispy onions. I love the mix of flavors. There's a spicy sauce that makes it even more tasty. Sometimes, I add vinegar for a good taste. Koshari is a great choice for lunch or dinner. It's also very cheap, so I can enjoy it often.

General Exercises on Unit 6

"Fettah" is a traditional Egyptian dish enjoyed during Eid Al-Adha. This celebration meal consists of layers of rice, bread, and soft lamb or beef. Families gather to share this special dish, which express unity and happiness. The recipe of "Fettah" is easy. Families usually come together during Eid Al Adha and eat "Fettah" . It is a healthy meal but we shouldn't eat too much of it. Eid Al-Adha in Egypt is a time of joy and happiness.

General Exercises on Unit 6

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1.Mariam's routine is ..... every day.

a. the same b. different c. difficult d. funny

2.Mariam has a friend called .....

a. Mona b. Ola c. Dina d. Basant

3.She goes to school by .....

a. train b. bus c. car d. plane

4.Mariam and her friend sometimes ..... together.

a. walk b. listen to music c. sleep d. swim

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Toka is asking Laila about her visit to Aswan

Toka : When did you go to Aswan?

Laila : ① .....

Toka : ② .....?

Laila : I went by train.

Toka : Who did you go with?

Laila : ③ .....

Toka : How was your trip?

Laila : ④ .....

Toka : ⑤ .....?

Laila : I saw a lot of things.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

pool - swimming - at - Cairo - friends

On Friday mornings, I have tennis lessons at the sports center ① ..... 10 o'clock. Sometimes I go ② ..... in the afternoon. I go with my ③ ..... . There is a big swimming ④ ..... in the center.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egyptians love football. Football was already popular in Ancient Egypt. When there is an important match going on, all the coffee shops are filled with lots of people drinking Egyptian coffee or tea. There are always people following the matches.

Mohamed Salah is my favorite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast** runner and clever footballer. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He gives money to help poor people. He is very friendly and he always talks to **his** fans. He hasn't got much time for hobbies, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ---

2. Who does Salah talk to?

   ---

3. Do you think Salah is a kind player? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**his**" refers to _____.
   a. poor people b. Salah c. his father d. fans
5. "**Fast**" is the opposite of _____.
   a. short b. weak c. slow d. friendly
6. One of Salah's hobbies is playing _____ games.
   a. boxing b. tennis c. video d. basketball

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To make pasta, you should_____the water well before adding it.
   a. boil b. oil c. fry d. serve
2. English is an international _____.
   a. meal b. menu c. snack d. language
3. He looked up at the_____ of the room while thinking about the problem .
   a. ceiling b. roof c. room d. trash
4. My father _____ up a new company in the New Capital City.
   a. make b. roof c. problem d. set

5. Put the trash in the ..... and take it out, please.

a. ban b. pen c. bin d. pin

6. I met my friend ..... the sports center last Friday.

a. of b. on c. at d. for

7. ..... did you have your last math lesson?

a. What b. When c. Who d. Which

8. He fell asleep ..... the film

a. while b. during c. when d. at

9. ..... did Adam do after he saw the accident?

a. What b. When c. Who d. Which

10. When ..... your father's birthday?

a. do b. did c. was d. were

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Where ..... (was) you last week?

2. ..... (What) did you go to Cairo ? - Last week.

3. How ..... (do) you go to school? - I went by car.

4. I went to Cairo ..... (tomorrow).

E Writing

7 Write a paragraph of (80-90) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"My celebration food"

Review (B)

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

water world (n)	عالم المياه	packaging (n)	تغليف
solution (n)	حل	impact on (n)	تأثير
two thirds (n)	ثلثي	eat green	يتناول الطعام الصحي
storm (n)	عاصفة	mash (ed)	يهرس
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	act (ed)	يتصرف
spicy (adj)	حار - متبل	face (d)	يواجه
transporting (n)	نقل		

Reading

SB Page (80)

استمع إلى النصوص

1 **Read the text quickly. Which of the problems in the photos are mentioned in text:**







Water world

In some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big problem. In fact, almost two thirds of the world's population face water scarcity at some point during the year.

This means having to walk a long way to find clean, fresh water, or not having enough to drink, cook, and wash.

Not having enough water can have a bad effect on people's health. Our bodies need a lot of water to stay healthy, but dirty water can make us very ill.

People who need water to earn money also suffer when there isn't enough. For example, farmers need water to grow crops. Without it, they don't have enough. crops to sell.

Some research shows that the problem of water scarcity is getting worse because of climate change. We must act now to find a solution!



Listening

SB Page (81)

1 Listen to the dialog. What does it mean to "eat green"?

Eating green

Hana : What are you doing, Menna?

Menna : I'm reading an article about ways to "eat green".

Hana : You mean ways to eat more green vegetables ?

Menna : Hana, no, not exactly. Eating green is about making food choices that don't harm the environment.

Hana : Oh, I see.

Menna : Our food choices have a big impact on the environment, you see. They can either increase, or help to reduce, climate change.

Hana : Can you give me an example?

Menna : Sure, no problem. Choosing local produce can make a big difference. If you buy food that is grown near to where you live, it doesn't need to travel long distances to get to you.

Hana : That's true. I guess driving or flying food around the world causes pollution.

Menna : Exactly. Secondly, try to buy food that has little or no packaging. Or, check that the packaging is made from something like paper or cardboard. Plastic packaging is the worst!

Hana : OK, got it.

Menna : Another thing you can do is to only buy as much as you need. Throwing away lots of food is a huge waste.

Hana : That's all really good advice". I will think more carefully about my food choices in future. Thanks, Menna!

Listening Material

Bit Bit نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى وحدات كتاب

Unit 1

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Playing sports is fun! You run, jump, and throw. It helps you get strong and healthy. You can play with friends and make a team. Sports teach you to win and lose. It's good to try different sports to find what you like best.

Exercises on Unit 1

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Volunteering at a community garden is a great way to help your community and learn new things. You can work with other people to grow fresh fruits and vegetables, which is good for your health and the environment. You can also learn about gardening, meet new friends, and feel good about helping others.

Unit 2

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The sun

The sun is a big, bright star that gives us light and heat. It's very important for life on Earth. Without the sun, our planet would be dark and cold. The sun is so hot that it can melt metal. The earth goes round the sun once a day.

Exercises on Unit 2

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My Friend Sarah

Sarah is my best friend. Every day, she wakes up early to go for a walk and then enjoys a healthy breakfast. She is interested in reading. On weekends, Sarah loves to go to the local public library to read a book. She dreams of writing her own book one day in the future.

Unit 3

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Raneem is 16 years old. She lives with her family in Paris. She came to Egypt to spend her holiday. She travelled to Aswan and watched the High Dam. The food there was delicious. She bought a postcard for her sister Riham. She enjoyed her holiday there.

Exercises on Unit 3

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Malek. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an engineer. My mother is a teacher. My father and mother work day and night to help us live a happy life. They bring us up to love our country, Egypt. We live in a nice flat in Cairo.

Unit 4

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Heba. I'm in prep school. Today is Friday. We don't go to school. I'm reading a nice book. My father is watching TV.

Exercises on Unit 4

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Salwa. I work as a nurse in a big hospital. I am always busy all day. I work in the children's ward. I'm looking forward to going home to have some rest. I'm very tired today.

Unit 5

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I'm Hatem. I want be eco-friendly. I turn off the lights. I have a shower not a bath to save water. I put my trash in the recycling bin. I ride my bike to school

Exercises on Unit 5

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Being eco-friendly means taking care of the environment and helping to protect our planet. You can save energy at home. You should turn off the lights when you aren't using them. You can use little water. Take short showers to save water. Turn off the taps to save water. Don't throw plastic bottles away, you can recycle them.

Unit 6

Al Azhar Exercises

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Uncle Ali is an engineer. He works in A big company in Cairo. He goes to work by bus. He has 3 children

Exercises on Unit 6

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Mariam is 13 years old. Her routine is the same every day. She goes to school by bus. She has a friend called Ola. They sometimes listen to music together.